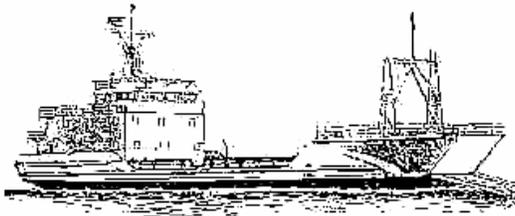


ARTEP 55-828-30-MTP

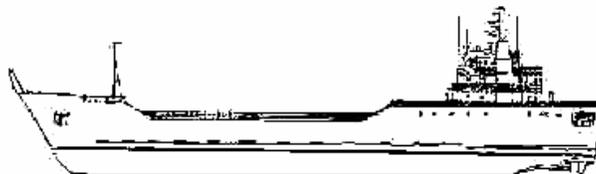
MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT



LCM-8



LCU 2000



LSV

JULY 2003

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION. Approved for public release;
distribution is unlimited.

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

Army Training and
Evaluation Program
No. 55-828-30-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, D.C., 11 July 2003

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE TRANSPORTATION
MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES
AND LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PREFACE	iii
CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING	
1-1. GENERAL	1-1
1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIALS	1-1
1-3. CONTENTS.....	1-2
1-4. TRAINING REQUIREMENTS	1-2
1-5. MISSIONS AND TASKS.....	1-6
1-6. METL-LINKED TRAINING STRATEGY	1-9
1-7. PLANNING PROCESS	1-11
1-8. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING	1-12
1-9. TRAINING STRATEGY	1-16
1-10. EXECUTING TRAINING	1-17
1-11. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY)	1-20
1-12. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION	1-23
1-13. ASSESSMENT	1-25
1-14. FEEDBACK	1-28
CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIX	
2-1. GENERAL	2-1
2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS.....	2-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION. Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This publication along with ARTEP 55-848-30-MTP, 9 June 2003 and ARTEP 55-887-30-MTP, 28 July 2003 supersede ARTEP 55-500-30-MTP, dated 30 September 1993.

	Page
CHAPTER 3. MISSION OUTLINE	
3-1. GENERAL	3-1
3-2. MISSION OUTLINE	3-1
CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES	
4-1. GENERAL	4-1
4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE	4-1
4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE.....	4-1
4-4. SAFETY	4-1
CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES	
5-1. GENERAL	5-1
5-2. STRUCTURE	5-1
5-3. FORMAT	5-1
5-4. USE	5-2
CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATION	
6-1. GENERAL	6-1
6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION.....	6-1
6-3. SELECTING THE EVALUATORS.....	6-7
6-4. TRAINING THE EVALUATORS	6-8
6-5. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION	6-8
6-6. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR	6-8
6-7. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION.....	6-12
6-8. PREPARING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW	6-14
6-9. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW	6-15
APPENDIX A. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY	A-1
APPENDIX B. ARMY UNIVERSAL TASK LIST	B-1
APPENDIX C. THE EFFECTS OF THE LAWS OF LAND WARFARE ON COMBAT HEALTH SUPPORT	C-1
GLOSSARY	Glossary-1
REFERENCES	References-1
QUESTIONNAIRE	Questionnaire-1

PREFACE

The purpose of the MTP is to provide a descriptive, performance-oriented training guide to assist leaders in training their units. The MTP contains tasks that support the unit's mission(s) outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use their METL to identify which collective tasks in the MTP must be trained. Task standards in the MTP are the Army's standards for executing those tasks. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP also contains Appendix A (Combined Arms Training Strategy), Appendix B (Army Universal Task List), and Appendix C (The Effects of the Laws of Land Warfare on Combat Health Support). This MTP is in full alignment with and is part of the United States Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to TOE 55530LJ000, Logistics Support Vessel; TOE 55828L000, Transportation Medium Watercraft Company; and TOE 55829L000, Transportation Heavy Watercraft Company.

Unless otherwise stated, the masculine gender is used for both men and women.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to: Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, Transportation Training Division, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-1511.

ENVIRONMENTAL TRAINING AND INTEGRATION

The US Army environmental strategy into the 21st century defines the Army's leadership commitment and philosophy for meeting present and future environmental challenges. It provides a framework to ensure that environmental stewardship ethic governs all Army activities. As an integral part of all Army missions, the Army's environmental vision is to be a national leader in environmental and natural resource stewardship for present and future generations. The Army's environmental vision statement communicates the Army's commitment to the environment.

Soldiers and leaders are expected to serve as the Army's basic environmental stewards and have a professional and personal responsibility to understand the Army's environmental program.

Soldiers and leaders must understand their specific duties and responsibilities concerning protection of the environment, and comply with environmental laws and regulations. Commanders must stay current of federal, state, local, and HN laws and must apply whichever are the most stringent.

Stewardship of our environment is part of our mission to maintain a trained and ready Army. Leadership is the key to success. Each leader in the chain of command, including the NCO support channels, is responsible for ensuring that the Army environmental strategy is implemented and that environmental stewardship is an integral part of everything we do. Each soldier, civilian, and family member is a steward of the environment. America's Army shares with all Americans their values of democracy, equal opportunity, and wise use of environmental assets. The American people expect the Army to manage the resources intrusted to it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND HAZARD AWARENESS NOTICE

DEATH or serious injury may result if personnel fail to observe safety precautions.

WARNINGS

FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING

Fuel is flammable and toxic to eyes, skin, and respiratory tract. Skin/eye protection is required. Avoid repeated/prolonged contact. Use only in well ventilated areas. Keep away from open flames or other sources of ignition. Post **FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING** signs around the area. Suitable fire extinguisher must be present.

Fuel on clothing can be fatal if ignited by a static discharge. If fuel gets on your clothes, leave the refueling area as soon as possible and wet clothes with water before taking them off. In extreme cold conditions, clothes should not be wet; instead, ground yourself to a piece of grounded equipment by taking hold of it before taking off your clothes. Wash skin with warm soapy water.

Spilled fuel creates a flammable, vapor-air mixture and fire can take place. Stop refueling immediately if fuel spill occurs.

FROSTBITE

Touching cold metal with exposed skin will cause skin to bond with metal. Gloves are required when touching cold metal objects. Do not touch cold metal parts with bare hands.

SOLVENT HAZARD

Dry cleaning solvent, P-D 680, Type III, used to clean parts is potentially dangerous to personnel and property. Eye protection is required. Avoid repeated and prolonged skin contact by wearing rubber or nonporous gloves when handling solvents or material wet with dry cleaning solvent. Wash hands with soap and water immediately after exposure and use a lanolin based skin cream to prevent skin drying. Do not use near open flame or excessive heat. Flash point of solvent is 138 degrees F. Do not work with solvent in a closed area. Be sure there is good ventilation or the solvent vapors will build up in the air and become a poisonous mixture which can cause physical injury or even death.

ELECTRICAL HIGH VOLTAGE CAN KILL YOU

Electrical high voltage cannot be seen, but it can kill you. Electricity is unlike most other dangerous things you can come in contact with because it gives no warning and no symptoms; and its effects are immediate. It can kill you, render you unconscious, or severely burn you. To ensure your safety and that of other maintenance personnel, always observe the following precautions:

- **DO NOT** perform any maintenance on electrical equipment unless all power is removed.

- **BE CERTAIN** that there is someone assisting you who can remove power immediately.

- **ALWAYS** place **POWER OFF** warning tags on power supply switches so that no one will apply power while you are performing maintenance.

- **FOR ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION**, refer to **FM 21-11**.

COMPRESSED AIR HAZARD

Compressed air can blow dust into the eyes. Wear eye protection. Do not exceed 30 psi at the nozzle. *FIRST AID* instructions are given in *FM 21-11*.

CARBON MONOXIDE (EXHAUST GAS) CAN KILL YOU

Carbon monoxide is without color or smell, but can kill you. Breathing carbon monoxide produces symptoms of headache, dizziness, loss of muscular control, a sleepy feeling, and coma. Brain damage or death can result from heavy exposure. Carbon monoxide occurs in the exhaust fumes of burning heaters and internal combustion engines. Carbon monoxide can become dangerously concentrated under conditions of no ventilation. Precautions must be followed to ensure operator's safety when combustion engines are in operation.

- **OPERATE** with the exhaust pipes unobstructed.
- **DO NOT** operate the powered module with a known exhaust (combustion air) leak.
- **BE ALERT** at all times during operating procedures for carbon monoxide poisoning. If exposure is present, *IMMEDIATELY* evacuate personnel to fresh air.
- **BE AWARE** the field protection mask used for NBC attack **WILL NOT** protect you from carbon monoxide poisoning.

THE BEST DEFENSE AGAINST CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING IS GOOD VENTILATION.

JEWELRY

Jewelry can catch on equipment and cause injury, or may short across an electrical circuit and cause severe burns or electrical shock. Remove rings, bracelets, wristwatches, and neck chains before working around or on the unit.

HOT COMPONENTS

Contact with hot components can cause burns. Allow unit to cool down before attempting service, inspection, or maintenance activity.

STEEL BANDING

Steel banding, cut under tension, can snap free and cause injury. Leather gloves and faceshield are required.

FUEL SPILL

Fuel is toxic and can cause injury to personnel and damage equipment. Improper positioning of external fuel source can cause the internal fuel tank to overflow. Properly position external fuel source.

NOTE

Report all hazards. If at any time you detect a hazard, it is your responsibility to report the hazard to ensure that it is corrected. If you detect a “new” or “suspected new” hazard, particularly due to equipment installation, modification, or repair, it is your responsibility to report through your chain-of-command to ensure that a **SAFETYGRAM** is submitted to the US Army Aviation and Troop Command, Safety Office. This will ensure that this hazard will be investigated, publicized, or corrected, as required.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Environmental damage has many wide-ranging consequences. The complete success of the tactical mission depends on your environmental awareness. Leaders and soldiers must be aware of the ramifications of their actions on the environment, which, in turn, reflects upon the overall mission. Prevention of spills and improper disposal of hazardous materials and hazardous waste is everyone’s responsibility. Know the proper procedures for preventing and reporting oil or fuel spills IAW your local unit SOP.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. **GENERAL.** This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors:

- Unit's METL.
- Chain of command training directives and guidance.
- Training priorities of the unit.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. **SUPPORTING MATERIALS.** This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in the Transportation Medium and Heavy Watercraft companies and LSV Detachment example at Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of the following:

- a. ARTEP 55-816-MTP for the Headquarters, Transportation Terminal Battalion. This ARTEP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the company's training program.
- b. STPs for the appropriate MOSs and SLs.
- c. OFS manuals for officer personnel.

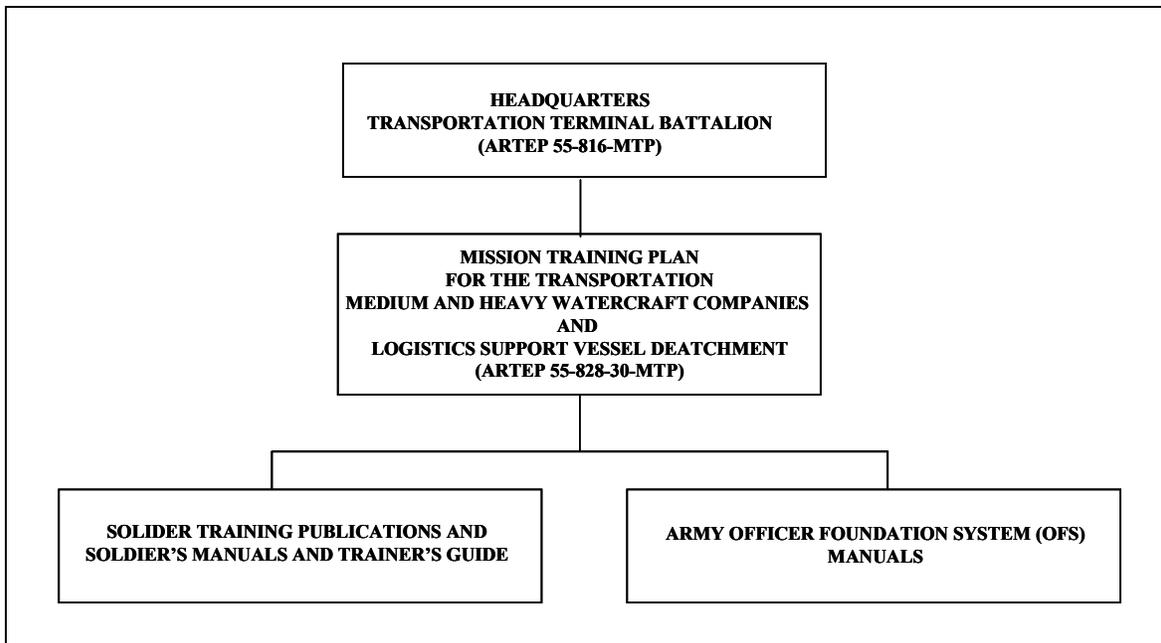


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. **CONTENTS.** This MTP is organized into six chapters:

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program. It includes doctrinal principles and implications outlined in FM 7-0, *Training the Force*. Based on these guidelines, commanders must tailor the information to meet the doctrinal requirements for their specific branch.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between missions, collective tasks, and individual tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a FTX and supporting STXs. They provide training information and a pre-constructed scenario. They also can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and OPFOR counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

1-4. **TRAINING REQUIREMENT.** Every soldier, NCO, warrant officer, and officer has one primary mission -- to be trained and ready to fight and win our nation's wars. Success in battle does not happen by accident; it is a direct result of tough, realistic, and challenging training.

a. **Operational Environment.** Commanders and leaders at all levels must conduct training with respect to a wide variety of operational missions across the full spectrum of operations. These operations may include combined arms, joint, multinational, and interagency considerations, and span the entire breadth of terrain and environmental possibilities. Commanders must strive to set the daily training conditions as closely as possible to those expected for actual operations.

(1) The operational missions of the Army include not only war, but also MOOTW. Operations may be conducted as major combat operations, a small-scale contingency, or a peacetime military engagement. Offensive and defensive operations normally dominate military operations in war along with some small-scale contingencies. Stability operations and support operations dominate in MOOTW. Commanders at all echelons may combine different types of operations simultaneously and sequentially to accomplish missions in war and MOOTW. These missions require training since future conflicts will likely involve a mix, often concurrently, of combat and MOOTW. The range of possible missions complicates training. Army forces cannot train for every possible mission; they train for war and prepare for specific missions as time and circumstances permit.

(2) Our forces today use a train-alert-deploy sequence. We cannot count on the time or opportunity to correct or make up training deficiencies after deployment. Maintaining forces that are ready now, places increased emphasis on training and the priority of training. This concept is a key link between operational and training doctrine.

(3) Units train to be ready for war based on the requirements of a precise and specific mission. In the process, they develop a foundation of combat skills that can be refined based on the requirements of the assigned mission. Upon alert, commanders assess and refine from this foundation of skills. In the train-alert-deploy process, the commander may use whatever time the alert cycle provides to continue refinement of mission-focused training. Training continues during time available between alert notification and deployment, between deployment and employment, and even during employment as units adapt to the specific battlefield environment and assimilate combat replacements.

b. How the Army Trains the Army. Training is a team effort. The entire Army (DA, MACOMs, the institutional training base, units, the CTCs, each individual soldier, and the civilian workforce) has a role that contributes to force readiness. DA and MACOMs are responsible for resourcing the Army to train. The Institutional Army, which includes schools, training centers, and NCO academies; train soldiers and leaders to take their place in units in the Army, by teaching the doctrine and TTP. Units, leaders, and individuals train to standard on their assigned missions, first as an organic unit and then as an integrated component of a team. Operational deployments and major training opportunities, such as major training exercises, CTCs, and EXEVALs provide rigorous, realistic, and stressful training and operational experience under actual or simulated combat and operational conditions to enhance unit readiness and produce bold, innovative leaders. The result of this Army-wide team effort is a training and leader development system that is unrivaled in the world. Effective training produces the force (soldiers, leaders, and units) that can successfully execute any assigned mission.

(1) The Army Training and Leader Development Model (Figure 1-2, page 1-4) centers on developing trained and ready units led by competent and confident leaders. The model depicts an important dynamic that creates a lifelong learning process. The three core domains that shape the critical learning experiences throughout a soldier's and leader's time span are the operational, institutional, and self-development domains. Together, these domains interact using feedback and assessment from various sources and methods to maximize warfighting readiness. Each domain has specific, measurable actions that must occur to develop our leaders.

- The operational domain includes home station training, CTC rotations, and joint training exercises and deployments that satisfy national objectives. Each of these actions provides foundational experiences for the soldier, leader, and unit development.
- The institutional domain focuses on educating and training soldiers and leaders on the key knowledge, skills, and attributes required to operate in any environment. It includes individual, unit and joint schools, and advanced education.
- The self-development domain, both structured and informal, focuses on taking those actions necessary to reduce or eliminate the gap between operational and institutional experiences.

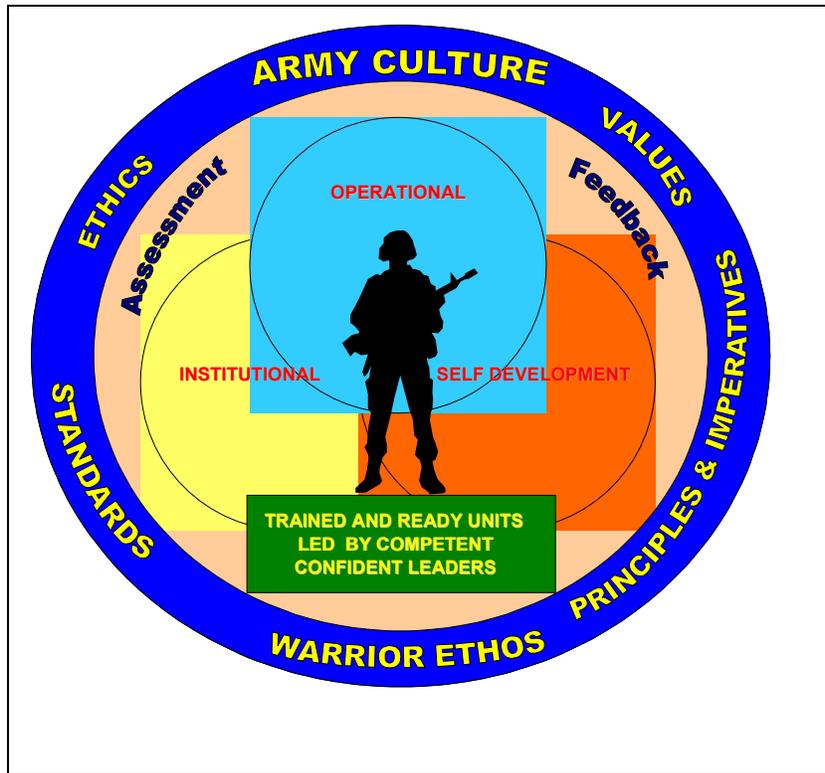


Figure 1-2. Army Training and Leader Development Model

(2) Throughout this lifelong learning and experience process, there is formal and informal assessment and feedback of performance to prepare leaders for their next level of responsibility. Assessment is the method used to determine the proficiency and potential of leaders against a known standard. Feedback must be clear, formative guidance, directly related to the outcome of training events measured against standards.

c. Leader Training and Leader Development. Competent and confident leaders are a prerequisite to the successful training of ready units. It is important to understand that leader training and leader development are integral parts of unit readiness. Leaders are inherently soldiers first and should be technically and tactically proficient in basic soldier skills. They are also adaptive, capable of sensing their environment, adjusting the plan when appropriate, and properly applying the proficiency acquired through training.

(1) Leader training is an expansion of these skills that qualifies them to lead other soldiers. As such, doctrine and principles of training require the same level of attention of senior commanders. Leader training occurs in the Institutional Army, the unit, the CTCs, and through self-development. Leader training is just one portion of leader development.

(2) Leader development is the deliberate, continuous, sequential, and progressive process, grounded in Army values, that grows soldiers and civilians into competent and confident leaders capable of decisive action. Leader development is achieved through the life-long synthesis of the knowledge, skills, and experiences gained through institutional training and education, organizational training, operational experience, and self-development. Commanders play the key roll in leader development that ideally produces tactically and technically competent, confident, and adaptive leaders who act with boldness and initiative in dynamic, complex situations to execute mission-type orders achieving the commander's intent.

d. **Role of the Unit.** Soldier and leader training and development continue in the unit. Using the institutional foundation, training in organizations and units focuses and hones individual and team skills and knowledge.

(1) **Commander responsibility.** The unit commander is responsible for the wartime readiness of all elements in the formation. The commander is, therefore, the primary trainer of the organization and is responsible for ensuring that all training is conducted in accordance with the unit's METL to the Army standard. Commanders ensure MTP standards are met during all training. If a squad, platoon, or company fails to meet established standards for identified METL tasks, the unit must retrain until the tasks are performed to standard. Training to standard on METL tasks is more important than completion of an event such as an EXEVAL. The objective is to focus on sustaining METL proficiency -- this is the critical factor commanders must adhere to when training small units.

(2) **NCO responsibility.** A great strength of the US Army is its professional NCO Corps who takes pride in being responsible for the individual training of soldiers, crews, and small teams. The NCO support channel parallels and complements the chain of command. It is a channel of communication and supervision from the CSM to the 1SG and then to other NCOs and enlisted personnel. NCOs train soldiers to the non-negotiable standards published in MTPs and STPs. Commanders delegate authority to NCOs in the support channel as the primary trainers of individual, crew, and small team training. Commanders hold NCOs responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training and providing feedback on individual, crew, and team proficiency. Commanders define responsibilities and authority of their NCOs to their staffs and subordinates.

(3) **Unit responsibility.** Unit training consists of three components. Collective training that is derived directly from METL and MTPs. Leader development that is embedded in the collective training tasks and in discrete individual leader focused training. And finally, individual training that establishes, improves, and sustains individual soldier proficiency in tasks directly related to the unit METL. Commanders conduct unit training to prepare soldiers and leaders for unit missions. All units concentrate on improving and sustaining unit task proficiency.

(4) **Relationship between institution and unit.** Institutions provide foundational training and education, and when combined with individual unit experience, provide soldiers and leaders what they need to succeed in each subsequent level of service throughout their careers, appropriate to new and increasing levels of responsibility. Unit commanders, through subordinate leaders, build on the foundation provided by Army schools to continue developing the skills and knowledge required for mission success, as articulated in the unit's METL. Unit commanders are responsible for sustaining small unit leader and individual soldier skills to support the unit's mission. Institutions are responsible to stay abreast of requirements and developments in the field to ensure the foundations they set prepare soldiers for duty in their units.

e. **Reserve Component Training.** The Army consists of the AC and the RC. The AC is a federal force of full time soldiers and Department of the Army civilians. The RC consists of the ARNG and the USAR. Each component is established under different statutes and has unique and discrete characteristics, but all share the same doctrine and training process, and train to the same standard. Availability of training support system capabilities, however, does vary between components. All train to the same standard; however, the RC trains at lower echelons. The number of tasks trained will usually differ as a result of the training time available, and the conditions may vary based on the RC unique environment.

1-5. **MISSIONS AND TASKS.** This MTP contains specified missions found in the TOEs and implied missions that these units must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical wartime mission is to provide watercraft transportation support.

a. **Specified and Implied Missions.** The commander may supplement specified missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit:

- Deploy Company Level Unit.
- Relocate Company Level Unit.
- Establish Company Level Area.
- Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment.
- Defend Assigned Area.
- Redeploy Company Level Unit.

(1) Each of these tasks may be trained separately or concurrently with other tasks during collective training exercises and evaluations. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as a STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop a FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

(2) Squad/element tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

(3) Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STPs and OFS training, battle simulations, and execution of this unit's missions.

(4) Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

b. **Commanders and Training.** Effective training is the number one priority of commanders. The commander is the primary trainer and responsible for the wartime readiness of their formation. In wartime, training continues with a priority second only to combat or to the support of combat operations. Commanders must extract the greatest training value from every training opportunity. Effective training requires the commander's continuous personal time and energy to accomplish the following:

(1) Develop and communicate a clear vision. The commander's training vision provides the direction, purpose, and motivation necessary to prepare individuals and organizations to win in battle. It is based on a comprehensive understanding of the following:

- Mission, doctrine, and history.
- Enemy/threat capabilities.
- Operational environment.
- Organizational and personnel strengths and weaknesses.
- Training environment.

(2) Train one echelon below and evaluate two echelons below. Commanders are responsible for training their own unit and one echelon below. Commanders evaluate units two echelons below. For example, brigade commanders train battalions and evaluate companies and battalion commanders train companies and evaluate platoons.

(3) Require subordinates to understand and perform their roles in training. Since good training results from leader involvement, one of the commander's principal roles in training is to teach subordinate trainers how to train and how to fight. The commander provides the continuing leadership that focuses on the organization's wartime mission. The commander assigns officers the primary responsibility for collective training and NCOs the primary responsibility for individual, crew, and small team training. The commander, as the primary trainer, uses multi-echelon techniques to meld leader, battle staff, and individual training requirements into collective training events, while recognizing the overlap in training responsibilities. Commanders teach, coach, and mentor subordinates throughout.

(4) Train all elements to be proficient on their mission essential tasks. Commanders must integrate and train to Army standard all BOS, within and supporting their command, on their selected mission essential tasks. An important requirement for all leaders is to project training plans far enough into the future and to coordinate resources with sufficient lead-time.

(5) Develop subordinates. Competent and confident leaders build cohesive organizations with a strong chain of command, high morale, and good discipline. Therefore, commanders create leader development programs that develop warfighter professionalism -- skills and knowledge. They develop their subordinates' confidence and empower them to make independent, situational-based decisions on the battlefield.

(6) Involve themselves personally in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing training. The commander resources training and protects subordinate commanders' training time. They are actively involved in planning for future training. They create a sense of stability throughout the organization by protecting approved training plans from training distracters. Commanders protect the time of subordinate commanders allowing them to be present at training as much as possible. Subordinate commanders are responsible for executing the approved training to standard. Commanders are present during the conduct of training as much as possible and provide experienced feedback to all participants.

(7) Demand training standards are achieved. Leaders anticipate that some tasks will not be performed to standard. Therefore, they design time into training events to allow additional training on tasks not performed to standard. It is more important to train to standard on a limited number of critical tasks, rather than attempting and failing to achieve the standard on too many tasks, rationalizing that corrective action will occur during some later training period. Soldiers will remember the enforced standard, not the one that was discussed.

(8) Ensure proper task and event discipline. Senior leaders ensure junior leaders plan the correct task-to-time ratio. Too many tasks guarantee nothing will get trained to standard and no time is allocated for retraining. Too many events result in improper preparation and recovery.

(9) Foster a command climate that is conducive to good training. Commanders create a climate that rewards subordinates who are bold and innovative trainers. They challenge the organization and each individual to train to full potential. Patience and coaching are essential ingredients to ultimate achievement of the Army standard.

(10) Eliminate training distractions. The commander who has planned and resourced a training event is responsible to ensure participation by the maximum number of soldiers. Administrative support burdens cannot be ignored; however, they can be managed using an effective time management system. Senior commanders must support subordinate commanders' efforts to train effectively by eliminating training distracters and reinforcing the requirement for all assigned personnel to be present during training.

c. Top-down/Bottom-up Approach to Training. The top-down/bottom-up approach to training is a team effort in which senior leaders provide training focus, direction and resources, and junior leaders provide feedback on unit training proficiency, identify specific unit training needs, and execute training to standard in accordance with the approved plan. It is a team effort that maintains training focus, establishes training priorities, and enables effective communication between command echelons.

(1) Guidance, based on wartime mission and priorities, flows from the top-down and results in subordinate units' identification of specific collective and individual tasks that support the higher unit's mission. Input from the bottom up is essential because it identifies training needs to achieve task proficiency on identified collective and individual tasks. Leaders at all echelons communicate with each other about requirements, and planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training.

(2) Senior leaders centralize planning to provide a consistent training focus from the top to the bottom of the organization. However, they decentralize execution to ensure that the conduct of mission related training sustains strengths and overcomes the weaknesses unique to each unit. Decentralized execution promotes subordinate leaders' initiative to train their units, but does not mean senior leaders give up their responsibilities to supervise training, develop leaders, and provide feedback.

d. **Battle Focus.** Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from assigned and anticipated missions. The priority of training in units is to train to standard on the wartime mission. Battle focus guides the planning, preparation, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program to ensure its members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process and is used by commanders to allocate resources for training based on wartime and operational mission requirements. Battle focus enables commanders and staffs at all echelons to structure a training program that copes with non-mission-related requirements while focusing on mission essential training activities. It is recognized that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task whether due to time or other resource constraints. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by consciously focusing on a reduced number of critical tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment. A critical aspect of the battle focus concept is to understand the responsibility for and the linkage between the collective mission essential tasks and the individual tasks that support them. The commander and the CSM must jointly coordinate the collective mission essential tasks and individual training tasks on which the unit will concentrate its efforts during a given period. The CSM must select the specific individual tasks that support each collective task to be trained. Although NCOs have the primary role in training and sustaining individual soldier skills, officers at every echelon remain responsible for training to established standards during both individual and collective training. Battle focus is applied to all missions across the full spectrum of operations.

e. **Battle Focus Training Management.** The foundation of the training process is the Army Training Management Cycle (Figure 1-3, page 1-10). In the METL development process, training must be related to the organization's operational wartime mission and focus on METL tasks. Leaders develop the long-range, short-range, and near-term training plans to train for proficiency on METL tasks. After training plans are developed, units execute training by preparing, conducting, and recovering from training. The process continues with training evaluations that provide bottom-up input to organizational assessments. Organizational assessments provide necessary feedback to the senior commander that assist in preparing the training assessment.

1-6. **METL-LINKED TRAINING STRATEGY.** METL provides the foundation for the organization's training plans. The following fundamentals apply to METL development:

- The METL is derived from the organization's wartime plans and related tasks in external guidance
- Mission essential tasks must apply to the entire organization; METL does not include tasks assigned solely to subordinate organizations
- Each organization's METL must support and complement the METL of higher headquarters
- The availability of resources does not affect METL development; the METL is an unconstrained statement of the tasks required to accomplish wartime missions
- Commanders direct operations and integrate the BOS through plans and orders.

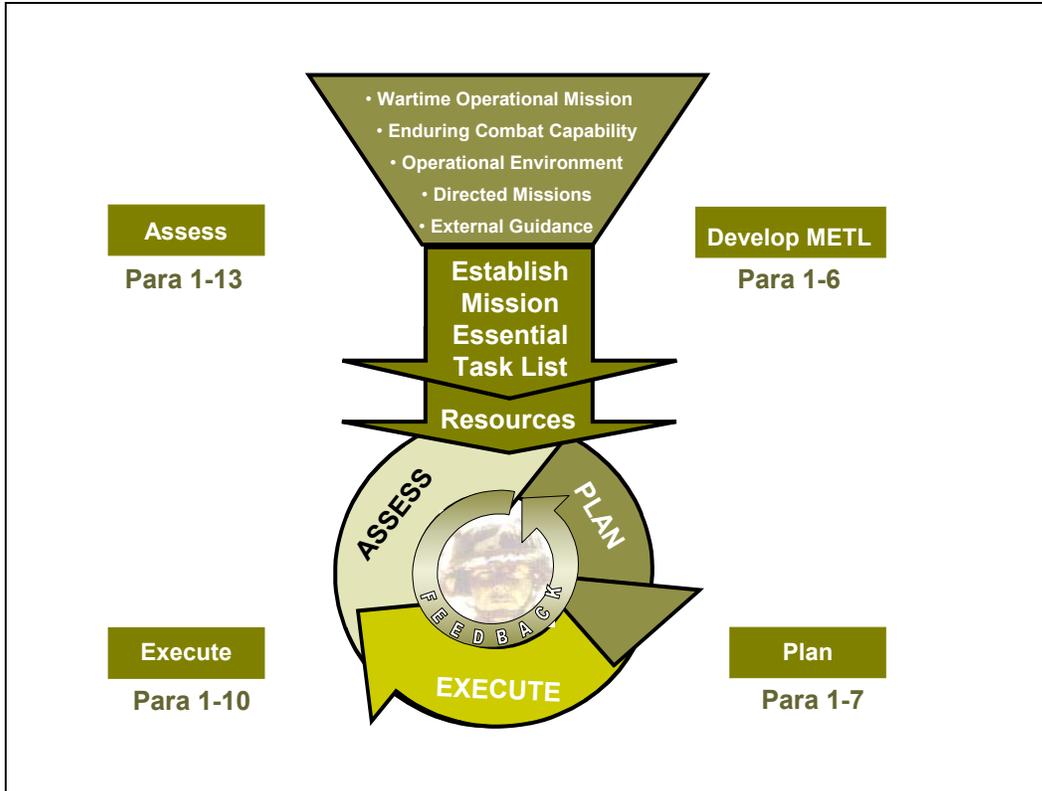


Figure 1-3. Army Training Management Cycle

a. **METL-based Training.** The METL is stabilized once approved. The commander is responsible for developing a training strategy that will maintain unit proficiency for all tasks designated as mission essential. Commanders involve subordinate commanders and their CSM in METL development to create a team approach to battle-focused training. Subordinate participation develops a common understanding of the organization's critical wartime requirements so that METLs throughout the organization are mutually supporting. Subordinate commanders can subsequently apply insights gained during preparation of the next higher headquarters' METL to the development of their own METL. The CSM and key NCOs must understand the organization's collective METL so that they can integrate individual tasks into each collective mission essential task during METL-based training.

b. **Battle Tasks.** After review and approval of subordinate organizations' METL, the senior commander selects battle tasks. A battle task is a staff or subordinate organization mission essential task that is so critical that its accomplishment will determine the success of the next higher organization's mission essential task. Battle tasks are selected for each METL task. Figure 1-4 depicts the relationship between wartime missions, METL, and battle tasks. Battle tasks allow the next higher commander to define the training tasks that --

- Integrate the BOS.
- Receive the highest priority for resources, such as ammunition, training areas and facilities (to include live and virtual simulators and constructive simulations), materiel, and funds.
- Receive emphasis during evaluations directed by senior headquarters.

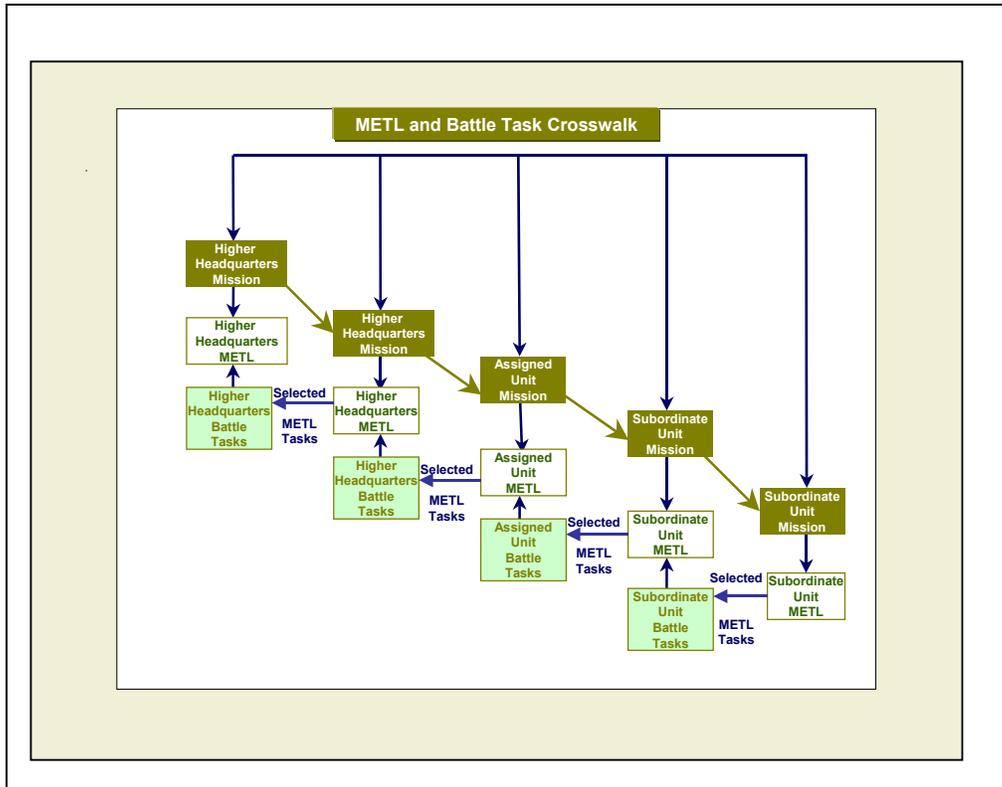


Figure 1-4. Relationships Between Mission, METL, and Battle Task

1-7. **PLANNING PROCESS.** Planning is an extension of the battle-focused concept that links organizational METL with the subsequent preparation, execution, and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all echelons within an organization. The planning process ensures continuous coordination from long-range planning, through short-range and near-term planning, and ultimately leads to training execution. The commander's assessment provides direction and focus to the planning process used to develop battle-focused training programs.

a. The commander applies two principal inputs at the start of the planning process -- the METL and the training assessment. Commanders identify tasks that support the METL. The training assessment compares the organization's current level of training proficiency with the desired level of warfighting proficiency.

b. The commander uses the broad experience and knowledge of key subordinates to help determine the organization's current proficiency. Although subordinates provide their evaluation as input for consideration, only the commander can assess the unit's training proficiency. For example, a division commander may direct that the assistant division commanders, key staff members, and subordinate commanders evaluate the training proficiency of the division's ability to execute mission essential tasks and supporting battle tasks. The division CSM and subordinate CSMs evaluate proficiency on individual tasks that support collective tasks. The participants review available collective and individual evaluation information, relying heavily on personal observations. They then compare the organization's current task proficiency with the Army

standard. The commander uses subordinate input in making the final determination of the organization's current proficiency on each task.

1-8. **PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING.** This MTP is based on the following ten training principles as found in FM 7-0, *Training the Force*. See FM 7-0 for further information.

- Commanders are Responsible for Training.
- NCOs Train Individuals, Crews, and Small Teams.
- Train as a Combined Arms and Joint Team.
- Train for Combat Proficiency.
 - Realistic Conditions.
 - Performance Oriented.
- Train to Standard Using Appropriate Doctrine.
- Train to Adapt.
- Train to Maintain and Sustain.
- Train Using Multi-echelon Techniques.
- Train to Sustain Proficiency.
- Train and Develop Leaders.

a. **Commanders are Responsible for Training.** Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization, are actively engaged in the training process, and adhere to the principles of training. To accomplish their training responsibility, commanders must --

- Be present at training to maximum extent possible.
- Base training on mission requirements.
- Train to applicable Army standards.
- Assess current levels of proficiency.
- Provide the required resources.
- Develop and execute training plans that result in proficient individuals, leaders,

and units.

Commanders delegate authority to NCOs in the chain of command as the primary trainers of individual, crew, and small teams. Commanders hold NCOs responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training and provide feedback on individual, crew, and team proficiency.

b. **NCOs Train Individuals, Crews, and Small Teams.** NCOs continue the soldierization process of newly assigned enlisted soldiers, and begin their professional development. NCOs are responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training. They identify specific individual, crew, and small team tasks that support the unit's collective mission essential tasks; plan, prepare, rehearse, and execute training; and evaluate training and conduct AARs to provide feedback to the commander on individual, crew, and small team proficiency. Senior NCOs coach junior NCOs to master a wide range of individual tasks.

c. **Train as a Combined Arms and Joint Team.** The Army provides a JFC with trained and ready forces that expand the command's range of military options in full spectrum operations. Army commanders tailor and train forces to react quickly to any crisis. Army forces provide a JFC the capability to do the following:

- Seize areas previously denied by the enemy.
- Dominate land operations.
- Provide support to civil authorities.

(1) Joint training uses joint doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures. Service sponsored interoperability training occurs when two or more services train together using their respective service doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures. Although, not classified as joint training, Service sponsored interoperability is a vital component of joint proficiency and readiness.

(2) Army forces seldom operate unilaterally. Joint interdependence from the individual, crew, and small team to the operational level requires training to develop experienced, adaptive leaders, soldiers, and organizations prepared to operate with joint and multinational forces and to provide interagency unity of effort.

(3) The commander's training plan must achieve combined arms proficiency and ensure functional training proficiency of the combat arms, combat support, and combat service support units of the task force. Combined arms proficiency requires effective integration of BOS functions. The commander's training plan must integrate combined arms and functional training events.

(4) Combined arms training is standards based. The independent training of functional tasks and combined arms tasks to standard will not guarantee the desired effects of applying combat power at a decisive place and time. The standard for effective combined arms training requires a sequenced and continuous execution of functional tasks and combined arms tasks to standard in order to achieve "...integrated relative combat power at a decisive place and time."

d. Train for Combat Proficiency. The goal of all training is to achieve the standard. This develops and sustains combat capable warfighting organizations. To achieve this, units must train to standard under realistic conditions. Achieving standards requires hard work by commanders, officers, unit leaders, and soldiers. Within the confines of safety and common sense, commanders and leaders must be willing to accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training.

(1) **Realistic conditions.** Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. Realistic training builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills, and inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn. Successful completion of each training phase increases the capability and motivation of individuals and units for more sophisticated and challenging achievement. This is the commanders' continuous quest.

(2) **Performance oriented.** Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using an experiential, hands-on approach. Commanders and subordinate leaders are responsible to plan training that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include TADSS, must be included in the unit's training strategy.

e. **Train to Standard Using Appropriate Doctrine.** Training must be done to the Army standard and conform to Army doctrine. In cases where mission tasks involve emerging doctrine or non-standard tasks, commanders establish the tasks, conditions and standards using mission orders and guidance, lessons learned from similar operations, and their professional judgment. The next higher commander approves the creation of the standards for these tasks. FM 3-0, *Operations*, provides the doctrinal foundation, and supporting doctrinal manuals describe common TTP that permit commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations. Doctrine provides a basis for a common vocabulary across the force. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn non-standard procedures. Therefore, units must train to the Army standard contained in the MTP and soldier training publications, while applying Army doctrine and current regulatory guidance.

f. **Train to Adapt.** Commanders train and develop adaptive leaders and units, and prepare their subordinates to operate in positions of increased responsibility. Repetitive, standards-based training provides relevant experience. Commanders intensify training experiences by varying training conditions. Training experiences coupled with timely feedback builds competence. Leaders build unit, staff and soldier confidence when they consistently demonstrate competence. Competence, confidence, and discipline promote initiative and enable leaders to adapt to changing situations and conditions. They improvise with the resources at hand, exploit opportunities and accomplish their assigned mission in the absence of orders. Commanders, at every echelon, integrate training events in their training plans to develop and train imaginative, adaptive leaders and units.

g. **Train to Maintain and Sustain.** Soldier and equipment maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment and supplies in a high state of readiness to support training or operational missions. Units must be capable of fighting for sustained periods of time with the equipment they are issued. Soldiers must become experts in both the operation and maintenance of their equipment. This link between training and sustainment is vital to mission success.

h. **Train Using Multi-echelon Techniques.** Multi-echelon training is the most effective and efficient way of sustaining proficiency on mission essential tasks with limited time and resources. Commanders use multi-echelon training to --

- Train leaders, battle staffs, units, and individuals at each echelon of the organization simultaneously.
- Maximize use of allocated resources and available time.
- Reduce the effects of personnel turbulence.

i. **Train to Sustain Proficiency.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure individual and collective training plans to retrain critical tasks at the minimum frequency necessary to sustain proficiency. Sustainment training is the key to maintaining unit proficiency through personnel turbulence and operational deployments. MTP and individual training plans are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

(1) Sustainment training must occur often enough to train new soldiers and reduce skill decay. Army units train to accomplish their missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks. Infrequent "peaking" of training for an event (CTC rotation, for example) does not sustain wartime proficiency. Battle-focused training is training on wartime tasks. Many of the METL tasks that a unit trains on for its wartime mission are the same as required for a stability operation or support operation that they might execute.

(2) Sustainment training enables units to operate in a Band of Excellence (Figure 1-5) through appropriate repetition of critical tasks. The Band of Excellence is the range of proficiency within which a unit is capable of executing its wartime METL tasks. For RC units the Band of Excellence is the range of proficiency within which a unit is capable of executing its pre-mobilization tasks. Training to sustain proficiency in the Band of Excellence includes training of leaders, battle staffs, and small lethal units. The solid black line shows the results of an effective unit training strategy that sustains training proficiency over time, maintaining it within the Band of Excellence. The dotted black line shows an ineffective training strategy that often causes the unit to fall outside the Band of Excellence, thus requiring significant additional training before the unit is capable of executing its wartime METL tasks. Personnel turbulence and availability of resources pose a continuous challenge to maintaining METL proficiency within the Band of Excellence.

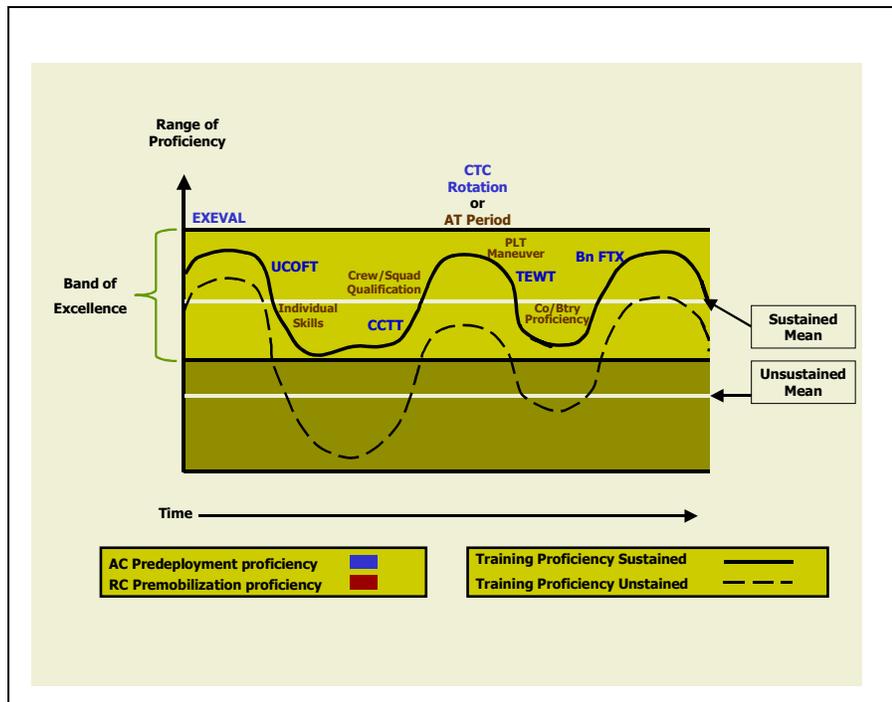


Figure 1-5. Bond of Excellence

j. **Train and Develop Leaders.** Commanders have a duty and execute a vital role in leader training and leader development. They teach subordinates how to fight and how to train. They mentor, guide, listen to, and “think with” subordinates. They train leaders to plan training in detail, prepare for training thoroughly, execute training aggressively, and evaluate short-term training proficiency in terms of desired long-term results. Training and developing leaders is an embedded component of every training event. Nothing is more important to the Army than building confident, competent, adaptive leaders for tomorrow.

1-9. **TRAINING STRATEGY.** The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's CATS as discussed in TRADOC Regulation 350-70. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy contained in Appendix A of this MTP is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the company to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies provided in the MTP provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy is comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of this unit's training strategy are:

(1) ***Maneuver and collective training strategy.*** The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) ***Gunnery strategy.*** The gunnery strategy is built around weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the STRAC manual or appropriate field manual publications.

(3) ***Soldier strategy.*** The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl-walk-run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting a FTX, and a STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL, and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status, will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander will identify the training tasks from the MTP required to train his METL. CATS are found in Appendix A of company and higher echelon MTPs.

1-10. **EXECUTING TRAINING.** This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in the FM 7-0, *Training the Force* and FM 7-1, *Battle-focused Training*.

a. The commander will assign the missions and tasks for training based on his METL and the training guidance from the next higher headquarters. Trainers must plan and execute training in support of this guidance.

b. The commander will review the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine whether the FTXs and STXs provided will support or can be modified to support your commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a listing of all collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. The commander will prioritize the tasks that need training. Time is seldom available to train everything. The commander must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. The commander will integrate training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

- (1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.
- (2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multi-echelon training for the best results.
- (3) Determine where the training can take place.
- (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- (5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The commander must approve the list of tasks to be trained and schedule them on the unit-training schedule.

f. The commander must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The commander must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

h. **Training Execution.** All good training, regardless of the specific collective, leader, and individual tasks being executed, must comply with certain common requirements. These include adequate preparation, effective presentation and practice, and thorough evaluation (evaluation is discussed in paragraph 1-13). The execution of training includes preparation for training, conduct of training, and recovery from training.

(1) ***Preparation for training.*** Formal near-term planning for training culminates with the publication of the unit-training schedule. Informal planning, detailed coordination, and preparation for executing the training continue until the training is performed. Commanders and other trainers use training meetings to assign responsibility for preparation of all scheduled training. Preparation for training includes selecting tasks to be trained, planning the conduct of the training, training the trainers, reconnaissance of the site, issuing the training execution plan, and conducting rehearsals and pre-execution checks. Pre-execution checks are preliminary actions commanders and trainers use to identify responsibility for these and other training support tasks. They are used to monitor preparation activities and to follow up to ensure planned training is conducted to standard. Pre-execution checks are a critical portion of any training meeting. During preparation for training, battalion and company commanders identify and eliminate potential training distracters that develop within their own organizations. They also stress personnel accountability to ensure maximum attendance at training.

(a) Subordinate leaders, as a result of the bottom-up feed from internal training meetings, identify and select the collective, leader, and individual tasks necessary to support the identified training objectives. Commanders develop the tentative plan to include requirements for preparatory training, concurrent training, and training resources. At a minimum, the training plan should include confirmation of training areas and locations, training ammunition allocations, training simulations and simulators availability, transportation requirements, soldier support items, a risk management analysis, assignment of responsibility for the training, designation of trainers responsible for approved training, and final coordination. The time and other necessary resources for retraining must also be an integral part of the original training plan.

(b) Leaders, trainers, evaluators, observer/controllers, and OPFOR are identified, trained to standard, and rehearsed prior to the conduct of the training. Leaders and trainers are coached on how to train, given time to prepare, and rehearsed so that training will be challenging and doctrinally correct. Commanders ensure that trainers and evaluators are not only tactically and technically competent on their training tasks, but also understand how the training relates to the organization's METL. Properly prepared trainers, evaluators, and leaders project confidence and enthusiasm to those being trained. Trainer and leader training is a critical event in the preparation phase of training. These individuals must demonstrate proficiency on the selected tasks prior to the conduct of training.

(c) Commanders, with their subordinate leaders and trainers, conduct site reconnaissance, identify additional training support requirements, and refine and issue the training execution plan. The training plan should identify all those elements necessary to ensure the conduct of training to standard. Rehearsals are essential to the execution of good training. Realistic, standards-based, performance-oriented training requires rehearsals for trainers, support personnel, evaluators, observer/controllers and OPFOR. Preparing for training in RC organizations can require complex pre-execution checks. RC trainers must often conduct detailed coordination to obtain equipment, training support system products and ammunition from distant locations. In addition, RC pre-execution checks may be required to coordinate AC assistance from the CONUSA, training support divisions, and directed training affiliations.

(2) **Conduct of training.** Ideally, training is executed using the crawl-walk-run approach. This allows and promotes an objective, standards-based approach to training. Training starts at the basic level. Crawl events are relatively simple to conduct and require minimum support from the unit. After the crawl stage, training becomes incrementally more difficult, requiring more resources from the unit and home station, and increasing the level of realism. At the run stage, the level of difficulty for the training event intensifies. Run stage training requires optimum resources and ideally approaches the level of realism expected in combat. Progression from the walk to the run stage for a particular task may occur during a one-day training exercise or may require a succession of training periods over time. Achievement of the Army standard determines progression between stages.

(a) In crawl-walk-run training, the tasks and the standards remain the same; however, the conditions under which they are trained change. Commanders may change the conditions, for example, by increasing the difficulty of the conditions under which the task is being performed, increasing the tempo of the task training, increasing the number of tasks being trained, or by increasing the number of personnel involved in the training. Whichever approach is used, it is important that all leaders and soldiers involved understand in which stage they are currently training and understand the Army standard.

(b) An example of the crawl-walk-run approach occurs in the execution of a platoon executing a STX. In the crawl stage, the platoon conducts a dismounted rehearsal of the task. In the walk stage, the platoon conducts a full rehearsal of the task. In the run stage, the platoon executes several iterations of the task against an OPFOR. Some iterations are conducted under nuclear, biological and chemical conditions, and some during periods of limited visibility. During each iteration of the task, the platoon strives to achieve the tactical objective to the standard described in the T&EO.

(c) An AAR is immediately conducted and may result in the need for additional training. Any task that was not conducted to standard should be retrained. Retraining should be conducted at the earliest opportunity. Commanders should program time and other resources for retraining as an integral part of their training plan. Training is incomplete until the task is trained to standard. Soldiers will remember the standard enforced, not the one discussed.

(3) ***Recovery from training.*** The recovery process is an extension of training, and once completed, it signifies the end of the training event. At a minimum, recovery includes conduct of maintenance training, turn-in of training support items, and the conduct of AARs that review the overall effectiveness of the training just completed.

(a) Maintenance training is the conduct of post-operations preventive maintenance checks and services, accountability of organizational and individual equipment, and final inspections. Class IV, Class V, TADSS and other support items are maintained, accounted for, and turned-in, and training sites and facilities are closed out.

(b) AARs conducted during recovery focus on collective, leader, and individual task performance, and on the planning, preparation and conduct of the training just completed. Unit AARs focus on individual and collective task performance, and identify shortcomings and the training required to correct deficiencies. AARs with leaders focus on tactical judgment. These AARs contribute to leader learning and provide opportunities for leader development. AARs with trainers, evaluators, observer/controllers, and OPFOR provide additional opportunities for leader development.

1-11. **FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY).** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units' project combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness, which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are:

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities and services.

a. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

b. Incorporate risk management into all training plans and supporting training events. The nature of our profession is inherently dangerous. Commanders must train their units to tough standards under the most realistic conditions possible. Application of the risk management process will not detract from this training goal, but will enhance execution of highly effective, realistic training. Risk management is the process of identifying, assessing, and controlling risks arising from operational factors and making decisions that balance risk costs with mission training benefits. Leaders and soldiers at all echelons use risk management to conserve combat power and resources. Leaders and staffs continuously identify hazards and assess both accident and tactical risks. They then develop and coordinate control measures to mitigate or eliminate hazards. Risk management is a continuous process for each mission or training event. It must be integral to military decisions, tied into each training plan, and become a continuous part of preparation for training.

c. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include:

(1) ***Commander.***

- Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
- Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
- Select risk reductions provided by staff.
- Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
- Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management

concepts.

(2) ***Officers and Senior NCOs.***

- Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk reduction options for training.
- Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards and performance measures.
- Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
- Assesses safety performance during training.
- Evaluates safety performance during AARs.

(3) ***Subordinate leaders.***

- Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.
- Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) ***Individual soldiers.***

- Report unsafe conditions and act to correct the situation when possible.
- Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
- Take responsibility for personal safety.
- Work as a team member.
- Modify own risk behavior.

e. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 5-0, *Army Planning Orders Production*. The five steps are:

(1) **Identify hazards.** Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) **Assess hazards.** Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probably effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-6, pages 1-24 and 1-25) is a tool for assessing hazards.

(3) **Make risk decisions.** Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) **Implement controls.** Integrate specific controls into OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs, and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) **Supervise.** Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow up and after action review. Develop the lessons learned.

f. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

g. The primary causes of fratricide are:

(1) **Direct fire control plan failures.** These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) **Land navigation failures.** These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) **Combat identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) **Inadequate control measures.** Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) **Reporting communication failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) **Weapons error.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

h. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- Loss of confidence in the unit leadership.
- Increasing self-doubt among leaders.
- Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- Over supervision of units.
- Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- Loss of initiative.
- Disrupted operations.
- General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-12. **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.** Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. **Identify Hazards.** Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-T factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. **Assess the Hazard.** Analyze potential severity of environmental degradation using the Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-7, page 1-26). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrixes.

c. **Make Environmental Risk Decisions.** Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. **Brief Chain of Command.** Brief chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable), on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
		A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH			
	CRITICAL	II		HIGH		
	MARGINAL	III		MEDIUM		
	NEGLECTIBLE	IV			LOW	

Effect

Catastrophic	Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage.
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage.
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system damage, minor property damage.
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.

Probability

Frequent	Individual soldier/item	Occurs often in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Continuously experienced.
Probable	Individual soldier/item	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs frequently.
Occasional	Individual soldier/item	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life.

Figure 1-6. Risk Assessment Matrix

Remote	Individual soldier/item	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.
Improbable	Individual soldier/item	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.
All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Possible, but improbable; occurs only very rarely.

Risk Levels

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission.
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

Figure 1-6. Risk Assessment Matrix (continued)

e. **Implement Controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards and rehearsals.

f. **Supervise.** Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-13. **ASSESSMENT.** Assessment is the commander's responsibility. It is the commander's judgment of the organization's ability to accomplish its wartime operational mission. Assessment is a continuous process that includes evaluating training, conducting an organizational assessment, and preparing a training assessment. The commander uses his experience, feedback from training evaluations, and other evaluations and reports to arrive at his assessment. Assessment is both the end and the beginning of the training management cycle. Training assessment is more than just training evaluation, and encompasses a wide variety of inputs. Assessments include such diverse systems as training, force integration, logistics, and personnel, and provide the link between the unit's performance and the Army standard. Evaluation of training is, however, a major component of assessment. Training evaluations provide the commander with feedback on the demonstrated training proficiency of soldiers, leaders, battle staffs, and units. Commanders cannot personally observe all training in their organization and, therefore, gather feedback from their senior officers and NCOs.

Environmental area		Rating:					
Unit Operations	Risk Impact						
Movement of heavy vehicle/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0	

Environmental Risk Assessment Worksheet

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	Movement of personnel and light systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Cmdr
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM Cmdr

Risk Categories

Figure 1-7. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

a. **Types of Training Evaluations.** Evaluations can be informal, formal, internal, external, or any combination thereof (see Chapter 6, External Evaluation).

(1) Informal evaluations take place when a leader conducts training with his unit, for example, when a squad leader trains his squad to assault an objective. Another example would be whenever a leader visits ongoing training, for instance, when a battalion commander observes company training. This type of evaluation provides real-time feedback on the training environment and the proficiency resulting from training.

(2) Formal evaluations are resourced with dedicated evaluators and are generally scheduled in the long-range or short-range training plans. Formal evaluations are normally highlighted during short-range training briefings. To the maximum extent possible, headquarters that are two echelons higher, conduct formal external evaluations (for example, division commanders evaluate battalions, brigade commanders evaluate companies, and battalion commanders evaluate platoons).

(3) Internal evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by the organization undergoing the evaluation.

(4) External evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by a headquarters at an echelon higher in the chain of command than the organization undergoing the evaluation or a headquarters outside the chain of command.

b. Evaluation of Training. Training evaluations are a critical component of any training assessment. Evaluation measures the demonstrated ability of soldiers, commanders, leaders, battle staffs, and units against the Army standard. Evaluation of training is integral to standards-based training and is the cornerstone of leader training and leader development. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

(1) All training must be evaluated to measure performance levels against the established Army standard. The evaluation can be as fundamental as an informal, internal evaluation performed by the leader conducting the training. Evaluation is conducted specifically to enable the unit or individual undergoing the training to know whether the training standard has been achieved. Commanders must establish a climate that encourages candid and accurate feedback for the purpose of developing leaders and trained units.

(2) Evaluation of training is not a test; it is not used to find reasons to punish leaders and soldiers. Evaluation tells the unit or the soldier whether or not they achieved the Army standard and, therefore, assists them in determining the overall effectiveness of their training plans. Evaluation produces disciplined soldiers, leaders and units. Training without evaluation is a waste of time and resources.

(3) Leaders use evaluations as an opportunity to coach and mentor subordinates. A key element in developing leaders is immediate, positive feedback that coaches and leads subordinate leaders to achieve the Army standard. This is a tested and proven path to develop competent, confident adaptive leaders.

(4) A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly, and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Evaluators. Commanders must plan for formal evaluation and must ensure the evaluators are trained. These evaluators must also be trained as facilitators to conduct AARs that elicit maximum participation from those being trained. External evaluators will be certified in the tasks they are evaluating and normally will not be dual-hatted as a participant in the training being executed.

d. **Role of Commanders and Leaders.** Commanders ensure that evaluations take place at each echelon in the organization. Commanders use this feedback to teach, coach, and mentor their subordinates. They ensure that every training event is evaluated as part of training execution and that every trainer conducts evaluations. Commanders use evaluations to focus command attention by requiring evaluation of specific mission essential and battle tasks. They also take advantage of evaluation information to develop appropriate lessons learned for distribution throughout their commands.

(1) The use of evaluation data can have a strong effect on the command climate of the organization. Therefore, senior commanders make on-the-spot corrections, underwrite honest mistakes, and create an environment for aggressive action to correct training deficiencies, through retraining. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow correcting performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and preventing reinforcement of bad habits.

(2) Commanders use training evaluations as one component of a feedback system. To keep the training system dynamic, they use feedback to determine the effectiveness of the planning, execution, and assessment portions of the training management cycle. These feedback systems allow the commander to make changes that lead to superior training results and to teach, coach and mentor subordinate leaders. To be effective, this feedback flows between senior and subordinate headquarters, within each command echelon, and among a network of trainers that may cross several command lines.

e. **After Action Review.** The AAR, whether formal or informal, provides feedback for all training. It is a structured review process that allows participating soldiers, leaders, and units to discover for themselves what happened during the training, why it happened, and how it can be done better. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. FM 7-1 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training. Take-home packages are an excellent source of feedback to include in a unit assessment. These packages consist of videotapes and written documentation of AARs, a report of unit strengths and weaknesses as noted by the observer/controllers, and recommendations for future home station training.

1-14. **FEEDBACK.** Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIX

2-1. GENERAL. The training matrix (Table 2-1) assists the commander in planning and executing unit training. The matrix is an organized set of relationships, which can be used to determine the missions and tasks to be performed in a specific situation or exercise.

2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS. This training matrix illustrates the relationship between the unit missions and their component collective tasks. The AUTL BOS are tools used to list all essential elements of the Army Division's combat power. The collective tasks are listed under the appropriate AUTL BOS. An asterisk in the matrix identifies the AUTL BOS. Appendix B defines the AUTL BOS used in this matrix. The training matrix is used to plan the training for a specific mission or AUTL BOS. The commander determines which tasks, in training each AUTL BOS, to perform. Based on the known proficiency of the unit, the training should concentrate on the unit's weaknesses. Training in AUTL BOS can be accomplished by providing training in all tasks listed in a specific system.

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
*DEPLOY/ CONDUCT MANEUVER Conduct a Convoy by Vessel (55-2-0501)		X		X		
Deploy and Redeploy by Logistics Support Vessel (55-2-0502)	X					X
Prepare Unit to Move (63-2-4002)		X				
Conduct Tactical Road March (63-2-4003)		X				
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Activities (63-2-4008)		X	X			
Occupy New Operating Site (63-2-4009)			X			

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Set Up Unit Headquarters, Dining Facility, and Bivouac Areas (63-2-4550)			X			
Perform Deployment Alert Activities (63-2-4801)	X					
Perform Human Resources Predeployment Activities (63-2-4802)	X					
Perform Predeployment Training Activities (63-2-4803)	X					
Perform Predeployment Supply Activities (63-2-4804)	X					
Perform Predeployment Maintenance Activities (63-2-4805)	X					
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment (63-2-4806)	X					
Prepare Unit for Nontactical Move (63-2-4807)	X					X
Conduct Nontactical Road March (63-2-4808)	X					X

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment (63-2-4809)	X					
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment (63-2-4810)	X					
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment (63-2-4811)	X					
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment (63-2-4812)	X					
Prepare Equipment Reception Team for Tactical Road March (63-2-4813)	X					
Perform Redeployment Human Resources Actions (63-2-4814)						X
Perform Redeployment Training Activities (63-2-4815)						X
Perform Redeployment Supply Activities (63-2-4816)						X

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Perform Redeployment Maintenance Activities (63-2-4817)						X
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Redeployment (63-2-4818)						X
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment (63-2-4819)						X
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment (63-2-4820)						X
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment (63-2-4821)						X
Perform Home Station Activities (63-2-4822)						X
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment (63-2-4823)						X
Perform Demobilization Station Activities (63-2-4824)						X

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Conduct Integration Activities (63-2-4825)	X					
Conduct Staging Activities (63-2-4826)	X					
*EMPLOY FIREPOWER Use Passive Air Defense Measures (63-2-4307)		X	X		X	
Take Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (63-2-4308)		X			X	
*PROTECT THE FORCE Defend Vessel Convoy (55-2-0498)				X		
Cross a Radio-logically Contaminated Area (63-2-4005)		X				
Defend Convoy Elements (63-2-4006)		X				
Set Up Unit Defense (63-2-4011)			X			
Prepare Unit for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Conditions (63-2-4013)			X			

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Employ Operations Security Measures (63-2-4016)		X	X	X	X	
Perform Operational Decontamination (63-2-4018)		X				
Perform Thorough Decontamination (63-2-4019)		X				
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (63-2-4020)		X				
Defend Against a Level I Attack (63-2-4021)		X				
Prepare Unit for Level II/III Threat (63-2-4022)					X	
Conduct Hasty Displacement (63-2-4023)					X	
Defend Unit Area (63-2-4024)					X	
Perform Withdrawal Under Fire (63-2-4025)					X	
Reorganize Unit Defense (63-2-4026)					X	
Execute Battle Handover (63-2-4027)					X	
Perform Area Damage Control Functions (63-2-4028)					X	

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (63-2-4226)		X				
Employ Physical Security Measures (63-2-4306)			X	X	X	
Respond to a Chemical Attack (63-2-4334)		X			X	
Destroy Supplies and Equipment (63-2-4522)					X	
*PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT Treat Casualties (08-2-0003.63-0001)		X	X	X	X	
Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0056)			X	X		
Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations (10-2-4513)					X	
Conduct Airdrop Resupply (10-2-C319)				X		
Provide Unit Supply Support (10-2-C320)				X		
Receive External Sling Load Resupply (10-2-C325)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Conduct Water-craft Salvage Operations (55-2-0008)				X		
Transship (LO/RO or LO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation (55-2-0012)				X		
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Cause-way Operation (55-2-0013)				X		
Transship (RO/RO or RO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation (55-2-0017)				X		
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation (55-2-0018)				X		
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Cause-way Operation (55-2-0019)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Support Shore-to-Shore Cargo Operations (55-2-0020)				X		
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation (55-2-0021)				X		
Provide Vessel Support for Off-shore Cargo Operations (55-2-0022)				X		
Perform Riverine Operations (55-2-0513)				X		
Set Up Logistics Operations Section (63-2-4012)			X			
Provide Human Resources Support (63-2-4015)				X		
Combat Battlefield Stress (63-2-4303)	X	X	X	X	X	X
Process Enemy Prisoners of War (63-2-4304)		X	X		X	
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (63-2-4305)		X	X		X	
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (63-2-4315)			X	X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Transport Casualties (63-2-4316)		X	X	X	X	
Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-2-4326)	X	X	X	X	X	X
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance (63-2-4552)		X	X	X		
*EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL Provide Production and Quality Control (55-2-1500)				X		
Provide Watercraft Repair Parts Supply Support (55-2-1501)				X		
Conduct Watercraft Supply Maintenance Operations (55-2-1502)				X		
Prepare Vessel for Sea (55-2-1503)				X		
Conduct Marine Hull Salvage Repair Operations (55-2-1505)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Conduct Vessel Operations (55-2-1508)				X		
Plan Unit Move (63-2-4001)		X				
Plan Occupation of New Area of Operations (63-2-4007)		X	X			
Plan Unit Defense (63-2-4010)			X		X	
Plan Area Damage Control Operations (63-2-4014)					X	
Maintain Communications (63-2-4017)				X	X	
Establish Communications (63-2-4040)			X			
Plan Unit Mobilization in a Peacetime Environment (63-2-4827)	X					

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Deploy Company Level Unit	Relocate Company Level Unit	Establish Company Level Area	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	Defend Assigned Area	Redeploy Company Level Unit
Plan Unit Deployment Activities Upon Receipt of a Warning Order (63-2-4828)	X					
Plan Unit Redeployment (63-2-4829)						X

CHAPTER 3

MISSION OUTLINE

3-1. GENERAL. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks.

3-2. MISSION OUTLINE. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the ability of this unit to perform its missions. The mission outline (Figure 3-1) provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's mission in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

FTX C-A					
PROVIDE WATERCRAFT TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT					
STX C-1		STX C-2		STX C-3	
DEPLOY COMPANY LEVEL UNIT		RELOCATE COMPANY LEVEL UNIT		ESTABLISH COMPANY LEVEL AREA	
55-2-0502	63-2-4810	55-2-0501	63-2-4021	63-2-4008	63-2-4012
63-2-4801	63-2-4811	63-2-4002	63-2-4226	63-2-4009	63-2-4303
63-2-4802	63-2-4812	63-2-4003	63-2-4334	63-2-4550	63-2-4304
63-2-4803	63-2-4813	63-2-4008	08-2-0003.63-0001	63-2-4307	63-2-4305
63-2-4804	63-2-4825	63-2-4307	63-2-4303	63-2-4011	63-2-4315
63-2-4805	63-2-4826	63-2-4308	63-2-4304	63-2-4013	63-2-4316
63-2-4806	63-2-4303	63-2-4005	63-2-4305	63-2-4016	63-2-4326
63-2-4807	63-2-4326	63-2-4006	63-2-4316	63-2-4306	63-2-4552
63-2-4808	63-2-4827	63-2-4016	63-2-4326	08-2-0003.63-0001	63-2-4007
63-2-4809	63-2-4828	63-2-4018	63-2-4552	10-2-0056	63-2-4010
		63-2-4019	63-2-4001		63-2-4040
		63-2-4020	63-2-4007		

Figure 3-1. Transportation Medium and Heavy Watercraft Companies and Logistics Support Vessel Detachment Missions Outline

FTX C-A					
PROVIDE WATERCRAFT TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT					
STX C-4		STX C-5		STX C-6	
TRANSPORT PERSONNEL, CARGO, AND EQUIPMENT		DEFEND ASSIGNED AREA		REDEPLOY COMPANY LEVEL UNIT	
55-2-0501	55-2-0022	63-2-4307	63-2-4334	55-2-0502	63-2-4820
55-2-0498	55-2-0513	63-2-4308	63-2-4522	63-2-4807	63-2-4821
63-2-4016	63-2-4015	63-2-4016	08-2-0003.63-0001	63-2-4808	63-2-4822
63-2-4306	63-2-4303	63-2-4022	10-2-4513	63-2-4814	63-2-4823
08-2-0003.63-0001	63-2-4315	63-2-4023	63-2-4303	63-2-4815	63-2-4824
10-2-0056	63-2-4316	63-2-4024	63-2-4304	63-2-4816	63-2-4303
10-2-C319	63-2-4326	63-2-4025	63-2-4305	63-2-4817	63-2-4326
10-2-C320	63-2-4552	63-2-4026	63-2-4316	63-2-4818	63-2-4829
10-2-C325	55-2-1500	63-2-4027	63-2-4326	63-2-4819	
55-2-0008	55-2-1501	63-2-4028	63-2-4010		
55-2-0012	55-2-1502	63-2-4306	63-2-4014		
55-2-0013	55-2-1503		63-2-4017		
55-2-0017	55-2-1505				
55-2-0018	55-2-1508				
55-2-0019	63-2-4017				
55-2-0020					
55-2-0021					

Figure 3-1. Transportation Medium and Heavy Watercraft Companies and Logistics Support Vessel Detachment Missions Outline (continued)

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

4-1. GENERAL. Training exercises are used to train and practice personnel in the performance of collective tasks. The two types of exercises in this MTP are FTX and STX. These exercises assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. This MTP has one FTX and six STXs (see Table 4-1).

4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE. The FTX provides a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime mission. This FTX also provides a logical sequence for the performance of tasks previously trained in the STXs.

4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE. The STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercise used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The unit commander may modify this STX based on local METT-T and available personnel and equipment. The STX provides the information for training personnel to perform the missions that make up the overall critical wartime mission. The STX performs the following functions:

- a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.
- b. Allows training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission before the critical wartime mission.
- d. Saves time by providing a majority of the information needed to develop a method for training.

4-4. SAFETY. Soldiers and leaders, during any training exercise, must be safety conscious. Evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that all training is conducted within established safety constraints. All personnel, prior to each exercise, will be briefed on specific safety measures that are to be taken during execution.

Table 4-1. Training exercises

EXERCISE	TITLE	PAGE
FTX C-A	Provide Watercraft Transportation Support	4-2
STX C-1	Deploy Company Level Unit	4-16
STX C-2	Relocate Company Level Unit	4-22
STX C-3	Establish Company Level Area	4-29
STX C-4	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	4-35
STX C-5	Defend Assigned Area	4-41
STX C-6	Redeploy Company Level Unit	4-48

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

FTX C-A

PROVIDE WATERCRAFT TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT

1. Objective. This FTX is designed to provide the commanders and key leaders with training in their critical wartime mission to provide watercraft transportation support during terminal and/or special operations to support combat operations. The commanders and key personnel must become proficient in deployment, relocation, establishment of the units area, and coordinating for transportation support. The units must also be proficient in defending their assigned area, vessel defense, and redeployment to home station. The tasks that are executed during this exercise are listed in Table 4-2, pages 4-4 through 4-8.

2. Interface.

a. This FTX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion FTX, Command Control and Provide Technical Supervision of Theater Terminal Operations.

b. The following STXs support the Transportation Medium and Heavy Watercraft companies and Logistics Support Vessel Detachment FTX Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.

- (1) Deploy Company Level Unit (STX C-1).
- (2) Relocate Company Level Unit (STX C-2).
- (3) Establish Company Level Area (STX C-3).
- (4) Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment (STX C-4).
- (5) Defend Assigned Area (STX C-5).
- (6) Redeploy Company Level Unit (STX C-6).

c. The Transportation Medium and Heavy Watercraft Companies are dependent upon the following organizations.

- (1) Corps or Theater for combat health support, finance, personnel and administrative services, and supplemental transportation support.
- (2) HHC, Transportation Terminal Battalion for religious, and legal support.
- (3) Cargo Transfer Company or supporting unit for automotive maintenance support.

(4) Harbormaster Detachment for watercraft operational control.

(5) Port Opening Watercraft Maintenance Company for DS/GS maintenance.

d. The LSV detachment is dependent on the TOE unit to which assigned or attached for religious, legal, finance, transportation, personnel and administrative services, and logistical support.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the unit's missions. Training that will improve the unit's ability to perform its missions are as follows:

(1) Planning, controlling, and supervising of administrative functions for the unit and for the operating elements of the unit, in performance of mission tasks and self-defense operations. This training may be conducted in garrison and in local training area by one of the following methods:

(a) MAPEX combined with a sand or terrain table model exercise. Use, if possible, a map of the actual area where the FTX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the terrain.

(b) Tactical exercise without troops.

(c) COMEX (to practice communications techniques).

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit in leaders and unit by the following activities:

(a) Aggressive unit sport and physical fitness program.

(b) Leader and individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have aggressive and positive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends after redeployment of the unit to home station. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-3, pages 4-9 through 4-11. Table 4-3 is a suggested scenario. Figure 4-1, page 4-12, illustrates the general sequence of task performances in this exercise.

c. This exercise may be conducted under several options. These options are not all-inclusive, and can be used in various combinations.

(1) Conditional options in support of:

- (a) Offensive operations.
- (b) Defensive operations.
- (c) Retrograde operations.
- (d) Day or night operations.
- (e) Adverse weather conditions.

(2) Operational options.

- (a) Provide watercraft transportation support.
- (b) Defend assigned area (vessel).
- (c) Perform unit level maintenance on all organic equipment except communication electronic and automotive equipment, and limit maintenance on landing craft associated equipment.

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct a Convoy by Vessel	55-2-0501	5-8
Deploy and Redeploy by Logistics Support Vessel	55-2-0502	5-13
Prepare Unit to Move	63-2-4002	5-18
Conduct Tactical Road March	63-2-4003	5-24
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-2-4008	5-30
Occupy New Operating Site	63-2-4009	5-36
Set Up Unit Headquarters, Dining Facility, and Bivouac Areas	63-2-4550	5-40
Perform Deployment Alert Activities	63-2-4801	5-45
Perform Human Resources Predeployment Activities	63-2-4802	5-49
Perform Predeployment Training Activities	63-2-4803	5-53
Perform Predeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4804	5-55

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Predeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4805	5-59
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment	63-2-4806	5-64
Prepare Unit for Nontactical Move	63-2-4807	5-71
Conduct Nontactical Road March	63-2-4808	5-75
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4809	5-79
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4810	5-85
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4811	5-80
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4812	5-94
Prepare Equipment Reception Team for Tactical Road March	63-2-4813	5-99
Perform Redeployment Human Resources Actions	63-2-4814	5-103
Perform Redeployment Training Activities	63-2-4815	5-107
Perform Redeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4816	5-109
Perform Redeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4817	5-112
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Redeployment	63-2-4818	5-117
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4819	5-126
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4820	5-133
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4821	5-138
Perform Home Station Activities	63-2-4822	5-142
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4823	5-146
Perform Demobilization Station Activities	63-2-4824	5-151
Conduct Integration Activities	63-2-4825	5-155
Conduct Staging Activities	63-2-4826	5-157
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	63-2-4307	5-161

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Take Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	63-2-4308	5-165
Defend Vessel Convoy	55-2-0498	5-168
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	63-2-4005	5-171
Defend Convoy Elements	63-2-4006	5-179
Set Up Unit Defense	63-2-4011	5-186
Prepare Unit for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Conditions	63-2-4013	5-191
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-195
Perform Operational Decontamination	63-2-4018	5-200
Perform Thorough Decontamination	63-2-4019	5-202
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	63-2-4020	5-205
Defend Against a Level I Attack	63-2-4021	5-208
Prepare Unit for Level II/III Threat	63-2-4022	5-212
Conduct Hasty Displacement	63-2-4023	5-215
Defend Unit Area	63-2-4024	5-218
Perform Withdrawal Under Fire	63-2-4025	5-223
Reorganize Unit Defense	63-2-4026	5-226
Execute Battle Handover	63-2-4027	5-229
Perform Area Damage Control Functions	63-2-4028	5-232
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	63-2-4226	5-235
Employ Physical Security Measures	63-2-4306	5-241
Respond to a Chemical Attack	63-2-4334	5-245
Destroy Supplies and Equipment	63-2-4522	5-250

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Provide Food Service Support	10-2-0056	5-260
Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations	10-2-4513	5-269
Conduct Airdrop Resupply	10-2-C319	5-275
Provide Unit Supply Support	10-2-C320	5-277
Receive External Sling Load Resupply	10-2-C325	5-280
Conduct Watercraft Salvage Operations	55-2-0008	5-284
Transship (LO/RO or LO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0012	5-286
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway Operation	55-2-0013	5-289
Transship (RO/RO or RO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0017	5-292
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0018	5-296
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway Operation	55-2-0019	5-300
Support Shore-to-Shore Cargo Operations	55-2-0020	5-304
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0021	5-306
Provide Vessel Support for Offshore Cargo Operations	55-2-0022	5-309
Perform Riverine Operations	55-2-0513	5-311
Set Up Logistics Operations Center	63-2-4012	5-315
Provide Human Resources Support	63-2-4015	5-318
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	63-2-4304	5-326
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	63-2-4305	5-329
Perform Field Sanitation Functions	63-2-4315	5-332
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	63-2-4552	5-342
Provide Production and Quality Control	55-2-1500	5-349
Provide Watercraft Repair Parts Supply Support	55-2-1501	5-353
Conduct Watercraft Support Maintenance Operations	55-2-1502	5-357
Prepare Vessel for Sea	55-2-1503	5-360
Conduct Marine Hull Salvage Repair Operations	55-2-1505	5-363
Conduct Vessel Operations	55-2-1508	5-366
Plan Unit Move	63-2-4001	5-369
Plan Occupation of New Area of Operations	63-2-4007	5-373
Plan Unit Defense	63-2-4010	5-376
Plan Area Damage Control Operations	63-2-4014	5-381
Maintain Communications	63-2-4017	5-384
Establish Communications	63-2-4040	5-390
Plan Unit Mobilization in a Peacetime Environment	63-2-4827	5-393
Plan Unit Deployment Activities Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-2-4828	5-398
Plan Unit Redeployment	63-2-4829	5-402

Table 4-3. Sample unit's FTX C-A scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
Deploy Company Level Unit		
1	Receive and verify warning order	20 min
2	Initiate recall plan	30 min
3	Perform administrative and soldier readiness processing activities	3 hr
4	Inspect unit's vehicles and equipment	3 hr
5	Load vehicles and equipment	3 hr
6	AAR	1 hr
7	Receive movement order	30 min
8	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
9	Arrive at APOE/SPOE	10 min
10	Perform embarkation activities	2 hr
11	Arrive at APOD/SPOD	30 min
12	Perform debarkation activities	2 hr
13	Perform staging and marshaling activities	2 hr
14	Conduct theater reception operations	2 hr
15	Coordinate theater integration activities	2 hr
Relocate Company Level Unit		
16	AAR	1 hr
17	Receive and verify warning order	10 min
18	Conduct route reconnaissance	2 hr
19	Provide input to S2/S3	20 min
20	Plan unit move	30 min
21	Plan occupation of site	30 min
22	Prepare vehicles and equipment	2 hr
23	Organize march elements	2 hr
24	Organize advance/quartering party	15 min
25	Receive movement order	30 min
26	Brief advance/quartering party	5 min
27	Dispatch advance/quartering party	10 min
28	Cross SP	5 min
29	Conduct tactical convoy operations to relocate to new operating site	2 hr
30	Cross RP	5 min
31	AAR	30 min
32	Brief march elements	10 min
33	Dispatch march elements	30 min
34	Cross SP	10 min
35	Conduct tactical convoy operations to relocate to new operating site	2 hr
36	Cross contaminated area	45 min
37	Threat interdiction	40 min
38	Continues convoy	45 min
39	Cross RP	30 min
40	AAR	1 hr

Table 4-3. Sample unit's FTX C-A scenario (continued)

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Establish Company Level Area	
41	Perform advance/quartering party activities	4 hr
42	Establish unit area of operations	6 hr
43	Organize unit defense	2 hr
44	AAR	1 hr
	Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment	
45	Provide watercraft transportation support	24 hr
46	AAR	1 hr
	Defend Assigned Area	
47	Defend unit area	15 min
48	Receive alert message	1 hr
49	Occupy fighting positions	1 hr
50	Increase perimeter manning	10 min
51	Assemble reaction force	10 min
52	React to Level I threat	45 min
53	Respond to NBC attack	45 min
54	Perform decontamination and monitoring operations	40 min
55	Receive notification of Level II/III ground attack	45 min
56	Increase defense preparation	10 min
57	Defend against OPFOR attack	30 min
58	Detect threat	4 hr
59	Engage threat	2 hr
60	Request indirect fire or close air support	30 min
61	Disengage threat	30 min
62	Conduct hasty displacement	30 min
63	Handover battle to tactical combat force/MP	10 min
64	Reorganize unit	15 min
65	Conduct ADC	20 min
66	Treat casualties	30 min
67	Evacuate casualties	30 min
68	Perform mortuary affairs operations	1 hr
69	Reconstitute unit	1 hr
70	AAR	2 hr

Table 4-3. Sample unit's FTX C-A scenario (continued)

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
Redeploy Company Level Unit		
71	Receive and verify warning order for redeployment	10 min
72	Perform administrative and SRP activities	30 min
73	Dismantle current operating site	1 hr
74	Inspect vehicles and equipment	10 min
75	Load vehicles and equipment	20 min
76	AAR	20 min
77	Receive movement order	1 hr
78	Conduct nontactical road march	20 min
79	Arrive APOE/SPOE	1 hr
80	Perform staging activities	2 hr
81	Perform embarkation activities	1 hr
82	AAR	1 hr
83	Arrive APOD/SPOD	2 hr
84	Perform debarkation activities	2 hr
85	Perform staging activities	1 hr
86	Receive movement order	20 min
87	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
88	Arrive home station	2 hr
89	Conduct home station activities	2 hr
90	Final AAR	3 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	108 hr, 15 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

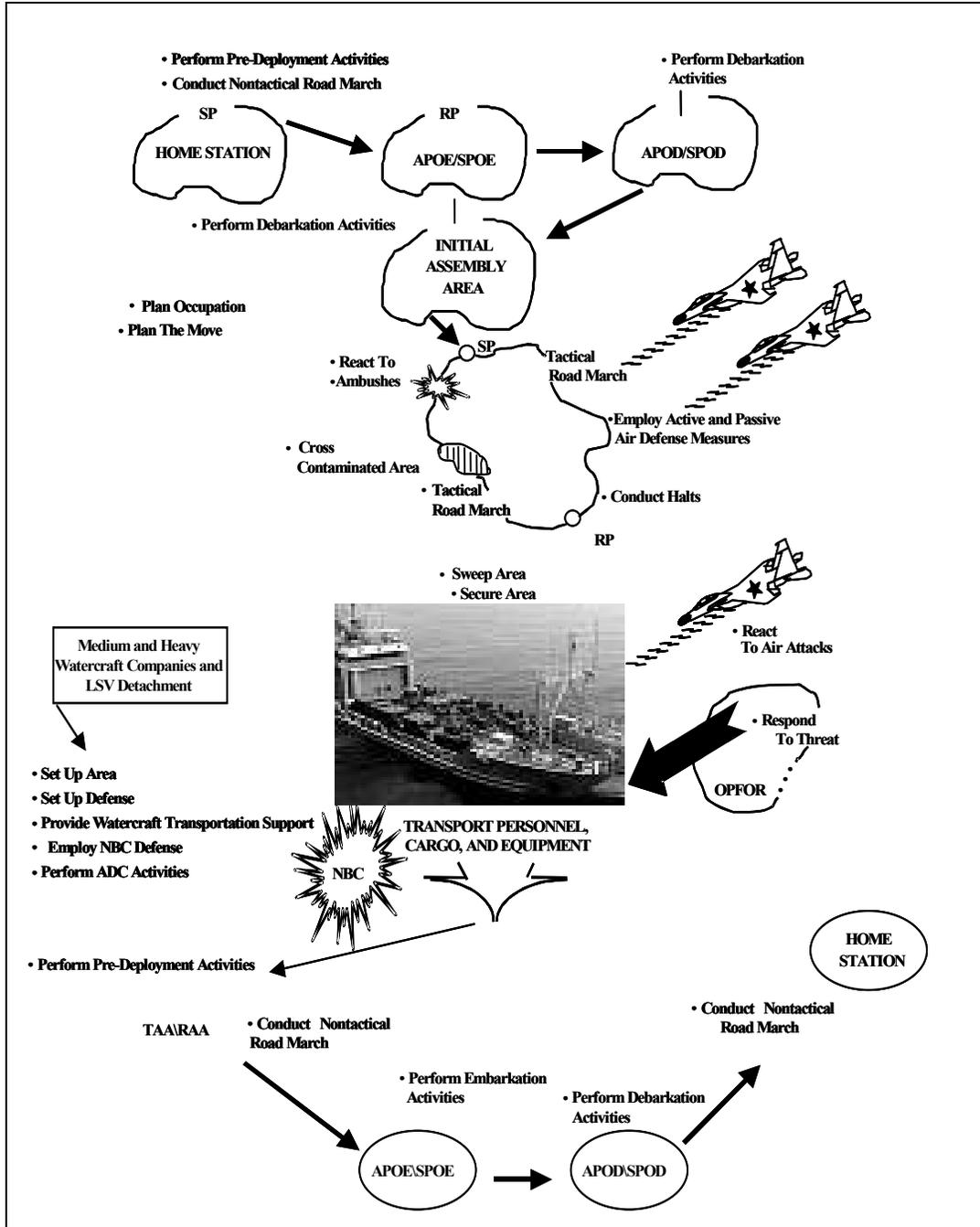


Figure 4-1. General scenario illustration

4. General Situation.

a. The terminal battalion has been notified to deploy. The battalion commander imitates actions by issuing the following WARNO.

“Be prepared to deploy to a theater of operation to provide transportation support. We will operate in the Echelon above Corps area. Some units may be attached to the Navy to support joint amphibious operations; others may operate separately under an appropriate commander, such as a theater support command, in an independent logistics support area. We will deploy by air and sea. Units may deploy as part of a higher element or separate. OPFOR is capable of inflicting Level I and II/III attacks and employing weapons of mass destruction at A/SPOD, staging, and marshaling areas, and along MSRs. The units will be prepared for OPFOR activities during RSO&I operations. The units will be prepared to defend against threat activity during movement and establishment of unit’s area. The Transportation Terminal Battalion will provide guidance to the unit when Level I and II/III threats are anticipated. Upon notification of a Level II/III attack, the unit will cease operations and defend their assigned area. The unit will defend their assigned area until the terminal battalion coordinates battle hand over to MP or a TCF and the hand over has been complete.

b. This exercise is also conducted under all day and night environmental conditions. The units will not operate under threat of NBC, ground or air attack, indirect fire, and electronic warfare.

5. Special Situation. The unit commander issues the following WARNO:

“We will deploy to a new theater of operations in support of the higher HQ mission. We will be employed to move personnel, cargo, and equipment during water terminal or special operations. Begin your planning process for deploying and relocating the unit to _____ grid coordinates, establishing the unit’s area’s of operation, performing watercraft transportation support, and defending our assigned area. This exercise will begin with a receipt of this warning order and ends on notification from me to redeploy to home station.”

6. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers/Evaluators.** The unit commander will be the trainer and also the primary evaluator. If possible, there should be an evaluator with each unit. At least one other evaluator is required with the OPFOR.

b. **Vehicles/Communications.** Communications equipment is needed for each controller/evaluator and the primary trainer. Radios are required for OPFOR vehicles during operations. Each controller/evaluator reports directly to the primary trainer.

c. **Opposing Force.** An OPFOR unit (+) and one aircraft are required for the exercise for Level II threat activities. The OPFOR should be well trained in patrolling, assault, and guerrilla tactics. The OPFOR should have specific missions in the unit’s area.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimension of 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers. A waterway (at least 25 nautical miles) and a beach (at least 500 meters) are required for vessel convoy and water off-loading operations.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the FTX, MIL items should be continually fed into proper channels. Input from the battalion staff and OPFOR causes response from the units. A major purpose of this FTX is to provide input to drive the units actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-4 shows the support needed to successfully complete this FTX.

Table 4-4. Sample consolidated support requirements, FTX C-A

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56-mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56-mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62-mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40-mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
.45 cal/M9 (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
.50 cal (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 per unit
OPFOR	
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 OPFOR
ATWESS	2 per LAW
Claymores (tng)	4-6 per unit
Simulators, arty	10 trainer/evaluator
Simulators, booby trap	10 unit
Simulators, arty	10 OPFOR
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/AN/VDR (Radiac set)	1 each
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades	4 each
IM 174 PD Radiac meter	5 each
IM 93/UD Dosimeter	13 each

Table 4-4. Sample consolidated support requirements, FTX C-A (continued)

OTHER	
Meals	3 per man, per day
War wound moulage set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each
Fire Marker Control System	(when available)
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined in this FTX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of these items in the suggested amount.	

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-1

DEPLOY COMPANY LEVEL UNIT

1. Objective. This STX trains the commander and key personnel in deploying to a new theater of operations. This STX also provides the commander and key leaders with practice in planning; controlling and coordinating deployment activities. The unit must become proficient in planning, preparing, and supervising deployment activities.

2. Interface.

- a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
- b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Supervise Deployment.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment (land, sea, or air) of the unit as a part of an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in DOD Regulation 4500.9-R, Part III; FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, and 100-17; and ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing deployment operations.

(b) Leaders should review the unit and higher HQ deployment SOPs.

(c) Leaders should conduct a reconnaissance of the training area where deployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

- (a) Inclement weather.
- (b) Various unit category levels.
- (c) Different mode of transportation.
- (d) With or without OPFOR interdiction.
- (e) Day or night.
- (f) Movement over single or multiple routes.

(2) The unit must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing deployment before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit commander, in coordination with higher HQ, secures deployment SOPs and reviews deployment outload unit rosters.

b. The UMO/NCO updates the unit deployment plans in coordination with higher HQ and installation support elements.

c. Higher HQ provides the unit with the deployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a deployment warning order and ends when the unit arrives at the theater of operations. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-5, page 4-19. Table 4-5 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The units are currently at home station or mobilization site. The medium and heavy watercraft units may deploy as part of a higher element or as separate elements. The LSV detachment will deploy as a separate element to a new theater of operations.

b. The unit UMO and NCOs provides unit movement data.

- c. The installation provides required deployment support.
- d. The APODs, SPODs, and OCONUS locations are identified.
- e. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO. The unit commander issues the following FRAGO: “We have been alerted to deploy to a new theater of operation. New OCONUS location is the vicinity of _____ grid coordinates. Begin your planning process to prepare to deploy within _____ hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this FTX.”

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainer and OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the intricate steps of deployment, a minimum of one OC per unit is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR may or may not be required when exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the units are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio for the OCs are needed.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area that is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers for deployment. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

e. **Master Incident List.** During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

Table 4-5. Sample unit's STX C-1 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Receive and verify deployment warning order	20 min
2	Initiate recall plan	30 min
3	Perform administrative and soldier readiness processing activities	3 hr
4	Inspect unit's vehicles and equipment	2 hr
5	Load vehicles and equipment	3 hr
6	AAR	1 hr
7	Receive movement order	30 min
8	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
9	Arrive at APOE/SPOE	10 min
10	Perform embarkation activities	2 hr
11	Arrive at APOD/SPOD	30 min
12	Perform debarkation activities	2 hr
13	Perform staging and marshaling activities	2 hr
14	Conduct theater reception operations	2 hr
15	Coordinate theater integration activities	2 hr
16	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	23 hr
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-6 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-6. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-1

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
M9mm (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 per unit 2 per OPFOR
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 per OPFOR
ATWESS	2 per LAW

Table 4-6. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-1 (continued)

EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-7. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-1

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Deploy and Redeploy by Logistics Support Vessel	55-2-0502	5-13
Perform Deployment Alert Activities	63-2-4801	5-45
Perform Human Resources Predeployment Activities	63-2-4802	5-49
Perform Predeployment Training Activities	63-2-4803	5-53
Perform Predeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4804	5-55
Perform Predeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4805	5-59
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment	63-2-4806	5-64
Prepare Unit for Nontactical Move	63-2-4807	5-71
Conduct Nontactical Road March	63-2-4808	5-75
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4809	5-79
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4810	5-85
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4811	5-90
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4812	5-94
Prepare Equipment Reception Team for Tactical Road March	63-2-4813	5-99

Table 4-7. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-1 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct Integration Activities	63-2-4825	5-155
Conduct Staging Activities	63-2-4826	5-157
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Plan Unit Mobilization in a Peacetime Environment	63-2-4827	5-393
Plan Unit Deployment Activities Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-2-4828	5-398

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-2

RELOCATE COMPANY LEVEL UNIT

1. Objective. This STX trains the commander and key members with practice in planning, coordinating, and supervising the relocation of the unit. The key leaders must become proficient in selecting routes, conducting reconnaissance and advance/quartering party operations, coordinating for required support for the move, and monitoring the movement of subordinate elements. This STX combines the elements of column formations, movement control, situation awareness, communication, and defense procedures necessary to accomplish relocation to a new operation site.

2. Interface.

- a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
- b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Supervise Relocation.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement movement of the unit as part of a CPX or FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 55-30 and FM 7-20 should be discussed, and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact STX area is used.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement.

(b) The unit and higher HQ TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A map/route reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where the movement will be performed, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

- (a) Elements moving over single or multiple routes.
- (b) With or without OPFOR interdictions.
- (c) With or without NBC environment.
- (d) Day or night.
- (e) Single or multiple lift move.

(2) The unit must become proficient in the basics of planning and conducting the movement and relocation of the unit before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit commander receives guidance from higher HQ S2/S3 to relocate to a designate terminal site or beach area to provide watercraft transportation support. The enemy situation will affect the force protection requirements.

b. The commander plans the move and prepares the movement order and/or sailing orders/annex.

c. The unit leaders/sergeants recommendations are provided in hard copy to the commander.

d. This is a CSS unit, which normally operates in echelons above corps level. Once the medium and heavy watercraft companies relocates from the initiate assembly area to its designated area of operations, the units will not relocate due to the nature of its mission.

e. This exercise begins with the assignment responsibility for the movement annex and ends when the last subordinate unit has crossed the RP. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-8, page 4-24. Table 4-8 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. Sample unit's STX C-2 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Receive and verify warning order	10 min
2	Analyze mission	30 min
3	Prepare movement plan/sailing orders	2 hr
4	Prepare site occupation plan	30 min
5	Provide input to S2/S3	20 min
6	Organize march elements	20 min
7	Conduct route reconnaissance	1 hr
8	Prepare vehicles and equipment	1 hr
9	Receive movement order	30 min
10	Conduct nontactical convoy operations to operating site	1 hr
11	Cross SP	10 min
12	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
13	Cross RP	10 min
14	AAR	30 min
15	Receive and verify warning order for relocation to new operating site	10 min
16	Plan the move	30 min
17	Organize advance/quartering party	10 min
18	Brief advance/quartering party	15 min
19	Dispatch advance/quartering party	15 min
20	Conduct advance/quartering party operation	4 hr
21	AAR	1 hr
22	Conduct tactical convoy operations to relocate to new operating site	10 min
23	Cross SP	10 min
24	Conduct tactical road march	30 min
25	Cross contaminated area	30 min
26	Threat interdiction	40 min
27	Continue convoy	30 min
28	Cross RP	10 min
29	AAR	30 min
	TOTAL TIME:	18 hr, 40 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

a. The unit has arrived at the new theater of operations and has assembled the unit equipment in the initiate assembly area. Upon receipt of a movement order, the unit will relocate to a new operating site.

b. Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available.

c. The unit commander and key leaders will conduct, if possible, a route reconnaissance.

d. The OPFOR is capable of launching air or ground attacks, employing NBC agents, and engaging in EW.

e. Major deviation(s) from the movement plan may occur.

f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO. The unit commander issues the following guidance:

The unit will convoy by (wheel/vessel) to a new operating site NLT _____. We will convoy to _____ grid coordinates. March and serial commanders will maintain communication by using the radio only when necessary and be brief. The enemy has the capability to interdict our convoy movements along the entire MSR. Maintain march discipline and proper distance between vehicles and serials. Be prepared for immediate action drill in case of ambush, and report to me any enemy activity or any other activity that impedes the progress of the unit. Uniform for all personnel is MOPP2. All serials will report upon closure at the new operating site.

7. **Special Situation.** Higher HQ states that the MSR has been hit with chemical contamination at _____ grid coordinates. Intelligence reports also states that enemy activity has been observed in or around the vicinity. Reroute the convoy if time permits; if not, stay on MSR and proceed with caution.”

8. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers/OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) MILES can be used or the OC can assess damage to the unit.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When an OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimension of 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers. A waterway (at least 25 nautical miles) and a beach (at least 500 meters) are required for vessel convoy and water off-loading operations.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-9 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-9. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-2

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per unit/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
EQUIPMENT	
All equipment organic to each unit to include TOE and CTA authorized.	
FUEL	
QUANTITY	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per unit
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each
CS Grenades	4/per OPFOR
OTHER	
Field rations	as required
War Wound Mouflage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all of the items in this table.	

9. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-10 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-10. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-2

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct a Convoy by Vessel	55-2-0501	5-8
Prepare Unit to Move	63-2-4002	5-18
Conduct Tactical Road March	63-2-4003	5-24
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-2-4008	5-30
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	63-2-4307	5-161
Take Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	63-2-4308	5-165
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	63-2-4005	5-171
Defend Convoy Elements	63-2-4006	5-179
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-195
Perform Operational Decontamination	63-2-4018	5-200
Perform Thorough Decontamination	63-2-4019	5-202
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	63-2-4020	5-205
Defend Against a Level I Attack	63-2-4021	5-208
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	63-2-4226	5-235
Respond to a Chemical Attack	63-2-4334	5-245
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	63-2-4304	5-326
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	63-2-4305	5-329
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Perform Unit- Level Maintenance	63-2-4552	5-342

Table 4-10. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-2 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Plan Unit Move	63-2-4001	5-369
Plan Occupation of New Area of Operations	63-2-4007	5-373

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-3

ESTABLISH COMPANY LEVEL AREA

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the commander and key members in planning, coordinating, and supervising establishment of unit bases and facilities. The key leaders must become proficient in planning occupation of the new area; coordinating advance/quartering party activities; supervising subordinate elements establishing base and facilities; establishing and maintaining communications; and force protection. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and supervising the functions necessary to occupy, develop, and defend the area.

2. Interface.

- a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
- b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Supervise Establishment.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

- (1) This STX can be used to establish the unit area as a part of a CPX or an FTX.
- (2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP, the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 3-3, FM 7-8, FM 3-19.4, FM 44-8, and FM 55-30 should be discussed; and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.
- (3) Leaders should use a map of the actual area where the STX is to be conducted, and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.
- (4) Tips for leader training.
 - (a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for setting up the unit AO.
 - (b) Unit and higher HQ TSOPs should be reviewed.
 - (c) Leaders should conduct, if possible, a reconnaissance of the training area where setup will take place.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

- (a) With or without OPFOR interdictions.
- (b) With or without NBC conditions.
- (c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(2) The unit must become proficient in doctrine and in the basics of planning and supervising the establishment of the unit area of operations and implementing force protection activities before attempting complex operations.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit commander provides planning guidance based upon higher HQ guidance. The type of operations determines the degree of the proficiency that will be accomplished. The enemy situation will affect force protection requirements. The unit must be prepared at all times to defend against air, ground, or terrorist attacks during day or night, and respond appropriately to enemy or friendly NBC operations.

b. Key leaders develop base facilities layout plans, force protection, and supervise their implementation. The commander is the proponent for these supporting missions with input from the unit leaders. The unit establishes the new operation site IAW the higher HQ and unit commander operational plans. When the site is operational, higher HQ is notified that the unit is prepared to perform its operational missions.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. In considering the proficiency of the unit leaders, the following sequential guidance can be used.

(1) Did the occupation plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2) Did the unit implement the occupation plan properly?

e. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to unit leader's weakness. Those identified in (2) above are the units weakness. If the plan is satisfactory, but the units execution is poor, then more frequent establishment during FTX for the unit level STX are required.

f. This exercise begins when the unit advance/quartermen party arrives at the new site and ends when the unit bases and facilities are established. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-11. Table 4-11 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

- a. The advance/quartering party has performed preliminary security and organization of the new site.
- b. Pertinent maps and overlays are available.
- c. The new AO may be a field or MOUT environment.
- d. The unit leaders have formulated a tentative layout and defensive plan.
- e. The OPFOR is capable of launching air, ground, and small watercraft attacks and engaging in NBC warfare and EW.
- f. Conduct this exercise in all environmental conditions.

Table 4-11. Sample unit's STX C-3 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Perform advance/quartering party activities	4 hr
2	Establish unit area of operations	6 hr
3	Organize unit defense	2 hr
4	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	13 hr
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

6. Special Situation. The unit commander is conducting a meeting with his unit leaders. The following guidance is given.

"Begin establishing the unit's bases and facilities. We will provide watercraft transportation support from this location. I want the unit area of operations set up and operational immediately, followed by administrative and bivouac areas. The enemy is capable of mounting aerial, ground and small watercraft attacks and is also capable of bringing direct and indirect fire upon us. Have all subordinate soldiers use cover and concealment to mask our activities and strictly enforce light and noise discipline. Have them place LP's and OP's far enough out to give adequate warning. Uniform remains MOPP2 for all assigned and attached personnel based on reports of enemy treat capabilities."

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers and OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. **OPFOR.**

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than squad size with one crew-served weapon.

(2) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

(3) The OPFOR should be well-trained in threat tactics, have specific missions, and be controlled when used.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, vehicles and radios for the OCs are needed.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimension of 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers. A waterway (at least 25 nautical miles) and a beach (at least 500 meters) are required for establishing the units area of operations.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-12 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-12. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-3

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	30 rds/wpn
5.56mm (Blank)	50 rds/wpn OPFOR
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/wpn OPFOR
Smoke Grenades	8 each OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4 each OPFOR
CS Grenade	4 each OPFOR
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier
MILES	1 set per soldier OPFOR
EQUIPMENT	
All authorized organic equipment to include TOE and CTA.	

Table 4-12. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-3 (continued)

FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/ODR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades (Practice)	4 each
OTHER	
Meals	Based on ration cycle
War Wound Mouflage Set	1 each
Aircraft for Simulated Air Attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-13 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-13. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-3

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-2-4008	5-30
Occupy New Operating Site	63-2-4009	5-36
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	63-2-4307	5-161
Set Up Unit Defense	63-2-4011	5-186
Prepare Unit for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Conditions	63-2-4013	5-191
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-195
Employ Physical Security Measures	63-2-4306	5-241
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Set Up Logistics Operations Center	63-2-4012	5-315
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	63-2-4304	5-326

Table 4-13. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-3 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	63-2-4305	5-329
Perform Field Sanitation Functions	63-2-4315	5-332
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	63-2-4552	5-342
Plan Occupation of New Area of Operations	63-2-4007	5-373
Plan Unit Defense	63-2-4010	5-376
Maintain Communications	63-2-4017	5-384
Establish Communications	63-2-4040	5-390

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-4

TRANSPORT PERSONNEL, CARGO, AND EQUIPMENT

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the commander and key leaders in establishing situational awareness and planning necessary to transport personnel, cargo, and equipment. The unit personnel must become proficient in transporting non-containerize cargo, combat-equipped personnel, vehicles, and containers during water terminal, waterborne tactical and joint amphibious, riverine or JLOTS operation. The unit must also become proficient in organizing defense measures against Level I and II/III threats. This FTX combines the elements of command and control and providing watercraft transportation support.

2. Interface.

- a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
- b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Provide Transportation Services.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement support for higher HQ as a part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures in FM 3-3, FM 7-8, FM 3-19.4, FM 44-8, and appropriate marine-related FMs should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

- (a) Personnel status procedures.
- (b) Administrative support procedures.
- (c) Health, welfare, and morale support functions.
- (e) Food service support.
- (f) Unit Maintenance functions.
- (g) Level I defense procedures.
- (h) NBC defense procedures.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide the units the training to teach teamwork and proper preparation of estimates and orders.

(4) Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command and control at unit level.

(5) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and planning administrative and logistical support.

(b) The unit and higher echelon TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A map/route reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) In a field or MOUT environment.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) Day or night.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(2) The trainers must become proficient in providing command and control, including planning, direction, supervision of mission operations, supply, food service, unit administration; maintenance, field sanitation programs; and organizing response to Level I threats and NBC attacks.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit commander provides planning guidance based upon higher HQ concept of operations.

b. Coordination of support operations is found in appropriate publications.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. This exercise begins when the unit area is established and is prepared to perform its support mission and ends when the unit comes under a Level II/III attack. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-14. Table 4-14 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-14. Sample unit's STX C-4 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Commander issues guidance	10 min
2	Provides Watercraft Transportation Support	24 hr
3	Final AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	25 hr 10 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

- a. The unit bases and facilities are established and the unit is now prepared to perform its critical wartime mission. The units mission is to provide watercraft transportation support.
- b. Unit and higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD are available.
- c. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from higher HQ to the unit. The unit implements OPSEC measures.
- d. The units have received commitments from higher HQ.
- e. Sufficient supplies and equipment are available.
- f. Conduct this exercise in a waterway or beach environment.
- g. The OPFOR may be conventional or unconventional forces and is capable of intelligence gathering. The OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. Local security is maintained by using OPSEC countermeasures.
- h. The OPFOR can launch air, ground, small watercraft, and/or NBC attacks. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred. OPFOR is capable of conducting EW.
- i. This exercise will only be conduct under normal conditions.

6. Special Situation. The unit commander issues the following guidance to his key leaders:

“We will continue to operate from our present location. Continue to stay abreast of requirements. The enemy is capable of mounting ground, aerial, small watercraft, and NBC attacks throughout the area, as well as bringing indirect fire upon our position. A nuclear strike by friendly forces is possible. Keep me updated on the status of our support operations. I want to be updated on the status of support as soon as you encounter problems or there is a break in operations.”

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers/OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander as the senior internal evaluator. Conduct this STX for the unit with one evaluator per unit.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR is not required when the exercise is a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used or the OC can assess damage to the unit.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimension of 1.5 kilometers by 1.5. A waterway (at least 25 nautical miles) and a beach (at least 500 meters) are required for providing watercraft transportation support.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-15 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-15. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-4

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56 mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per unit/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
Blank Adapters	1 per wpn
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment including TOE and CTA items authorized.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
QUANTITY	
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per unit
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each
CS Grenades	4/per OPFOR

Table 4-15. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-4 (continued)

OTHER	
Field rations	as required
War Wound Mouflage Set	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-16 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-16. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-4

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct a Convoy by Vessel	55-2-0501	5-8
Defend Vessel Convoy	55-2-0498	5-168
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-195
Employ Physical Security Measures	63-2-4306	5-241
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Provide Food Service Support	10-2-0056	5-260
Conduct Airdrop Resupply	10-2-C319	5-275
Provide Unit Supply Support	10-2-C320	5-277
Receive External Sling Load Resupply	10-2-C325	5-280
Conduct Watercraft Salvage Operations	55-2-0008	5-284
Transship (LO/RO or LO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0012	5-286
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway Operation	55-2-0013	5-289
Transship (RO/RO or RO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0017	5-292
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0018	5-296
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway		

ARTEP 55-828-30-MTP

Operation

55-2-0019

5-300

Table 4-16. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-4 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Support Shore-to-Shore Cargo Operations	55-2-0020	5-304
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0021	5-306
Provide Vessel Support for Offshore Cargo Operations	55-2-0022	5-309
Perform Riverine Operations	55-2-0513	5-311
Provide Human Resources Support	63-2-4015	5-318
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Perform Field Sanitation Functions	63-2-4315	5-332
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	63-2-4552	5-343
Provide Production and Quality Control	55-2-1500	5-349
Provide Watercraft Repair Parts Supply Support	55-2-1501	5-353
Conduct Watercraft Support Maintenance Operations	55-2-1502	5-357
Prepare Vessel for Sea	55-2-1503	5-360
Conduct Marine Hull Salvage Repair Operations	55-2-1505	5-363
Conduct Vessel Operations	55-2-1508	5-366
Maintain Communications	63-2-4017	5-384

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-5

DEFEND ASSIGNED AREA

1. Objective. This STX trains the commander and key leaders in planning, coordinating, and command and control of force protection activities of the unit area. The commander and key leaders must become proficient in planning self-defense measures, establishing and coordinating area defense, operating the base operations center, and directing responses to the area's threat. The STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and directing procedures necessary to accomplish force protection.

2. Interface.

- a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
- b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Supervise Force Protection.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and conduct self-defensive operations as a part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) Classroom activities will cover the unit TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in the T&EOs in this STX. The trainer should emphasize the following items:

- (a) Implementation of defensive plan.
- (b) Proper use of weapons.
- (c) Maneuver and fires.
- (d) Indirect fire and CAS calling procedures.
- (e) Withdrawal.
- (f) NBC defense procedures.
- (g) Hasty displacement procedures.
- (h) ADC procedures.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STX is used.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing unit self-defense measures.

(b) Unit and higher HQ TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) If possible, leaders should conduct a map/ground reconnaissance of the training area if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit has demonstrates proficiency in the tasks for this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without NBC conditions.

(b) Day or night.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(2) The unit leaders must become proficient in the basics of planning and conducting unit self-defensive measures before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit must be prepared at any time to defend against air, ground, small watercraft, or threat attacks during daylight or darkness and is prepared to respond appropriately to enemy or friendly chemical or nuclear operations.

b. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c. This exercise begins when the unit receives notification of an attack and ends after the unit completes ADC operations. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-17. Table 4-17 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-17. Sample unit's STX C-5 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Receives notification of attack	10 min
2	Occupy fighting positions	15 min
3	Increase perimeter manning	20 min
4	Assemble reaction force	30 min
5	React to Level I threat	30 min
6	Respond to NBC attack	1 hr
7	Perform decontamination and monitoring operations	1 hr
8	Receive notification of Level II/III ground attack	10 min
9	Increase defense preparation	30 min
10	Defend against OPFOR attack	1 hr
11	Detect threat	15 min
12	Engage threat	30 min
13	Request indirect fire or close air support	15 min
14	Disengage threat	30 min
15	Conduct hasty displacement	1 hr
16	Handover battle to tactical combat force/MP	30 min
17	Reorganize unit	1 hr
18	Conduct ADC	2 hr
19	Treat casualties	1 hr
20	Evacuate casualties	1 hr
21	Perform mortuary affairs operations	2 hr
22	Reconstitute unit	3 hr
23	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	19 hr, 25 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

a. The unit has established its defensive positions as part of a base cluster and has received notification of a Level II/III attack. The OPFOR has infiltrated or airdropped a unit size or larger force in the area to seek out command and control support facilities to disrupt friendly battle sustainment.

b. Unit and higher HQ TSOPs and OPORD with rear annex are available.

c. The unit defense has been established.

d. Rear operations communications system has been established.

e. This exercise is conducted under all day and night environmental conditions.

f. The OPFOR has the potential to conduct ground, air, small watercraft, and NBC warfare.

6. FRAGO. The commander issues the following FRAGO: "A Level II/III attack is imminent. Cease operations and implement unit defense plan. Prepare for threat engagement within 30 minutes. Further information will be disseminated as the exercise develops."

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers and OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. OPFOR.

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than squad size with two crew-served weapon. The OPFOR should have specific mission and be controlled when used.

(2) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

(3) The OPFOR should be well trained in threat tactics, have specific missions, and be controlled when used.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, vehicles and radios for the OCs are needed.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area, which is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-18 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-18. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-5

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	30 rds/wpn
5.56mm (Blank)	50 rds/wpn OPFOR
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/wpn OPFOR
Smoke Grenades	8 each OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4 each OPFOR
CS Grenade	4 each OPFOR
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier
MILES	1 set per soldier OPFOR
EQUIPMENT	
All authorized organic equipment to include TOE and CTA.	
FUEL	QUANTITY
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/ODR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades (Practice)	4 each
OTHER	
Meals	Based on ration cycle
War Wound Mouflage Set	1 each
Aircraft for Simulated Air Attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended As suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-19 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-19. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-5

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	63-2-4307	5-161
Take Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	63-2-4308	5-165
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-185
Prepare Unit for Level II/III Threat	63-2-4022	5-212
Conduct Hasty Displacement	63-2-4023	5-215
Defend Unit Area	63-2-4024	5-218
Perform Withdrawal Under Fire	63-2-4025	5-223
Reorganize Unit Defense	63-2-4026	5-226
Execute Battle Handover	63-2-4027	5-229
Perform Area Damage Control Functions	63-2-4028	5-232
Employ Physical Security Measures	63-2-4306	5-241
Respond to a Chemical Attack	63-2-4334	5-245
Destroy Supplies and Equipment	63-2-4522	5-250
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations	10-2-4513	5-269
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	63-2-4304	5-326
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	63-2-4305	5-329
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335

Table 4-19. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-5 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Plan Unit Defense	63-2-4010	5-376
Plan Area Damage Control Operations	63-2-4014	5-381
Maintain Communications	63-2-4017	5-384

**TRANSPORTATION MEDIUM AND HEAVY WATERCRAFT COMPANIES AND
LOGISTICS SUPPORT VESSEL DETACHMENT**

STX C-6

REDEPLOY COMPANY LEVEL UNIT

- 1. Objective.** This STX trains the commander and key leaders in supervising the unit's redeployment from a theater of operations to home station or mobilization site. The unit commander and key leaders must become proficient in planning and preparing the unit for redeployment operations.
- 2. Interface.**
 - a. This STX supports the unit's FTX, Provide Watercraft Transportation Support.
 - b. This STX supports the Transportation Terminal Battalion STX, Supervise Redeployment.
- 3. Training.**
 - a. **Leader Training.**
 - (1) This STX can be used to plan and implement redeployment (land, sea, or air) of the unit as a part of an FTX.
 - (2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in DOD Regulation 4500.9-R, Part III; FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, 90-26, and 100-17; and ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.
 - (3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.
 - (4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.
 - (5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.
 - (6) Tips for leader training.
 - (a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing redeployment operations.
 - (b) Leaders should review the unit and battalion SOPs.
 - (c) Leaders should conduct a map/ground reconnaissance of the training area where redeployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

- (a) Inclement weather.
- (b) Multiple increments.
- (c) Different mode of transportation.
- (d) Day or night.

(2) The unit must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing basic redeployment before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the unit sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The unit commander in coordination with the higher echelon secures required redeployment SOPs.

b. Unit Movement Officer/NCO updates unit redeployment plans in coordination with higher echelon staff.

c. Higher HQ provides the unit with the redeployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends upon completion of redeployment activities. Conduct AARs as shown in Table 4-20, page 4-50. Table 4-20 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The unit is employed in a theater of operations and is to be redeployed to CONUS. The unit is under the command and control of the higher HQ.

b. The unit provides personnel and equipment status reports.

c. The base support elements provide required redeployment support.

d. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

Table 4-20. Sample unit's STX C-6 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Receive and verify warning order for redeployment	30 min
2	Perform administrative and SRP activities	1 hr
3	Dismantle current operating site	2 hr
4	Inspect vehicles and equipment	2 hr
5	Load vehicles and equipment	3 hr
6	AAR	1 hr
7	Receive movement order	30 min
8	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
9	Arrive APOE/SPOE	10 min
10	Perform staging activities	1 hr
11	Perform embarkation activities	1 hr
12	AAR	1 hr
13	Arrive APOD/SPOD	30 min
14	Perform debarkation activities	1 hr
15	Perform staging activities	30 min
16	Receive movement order to new area of operations	30 min
17	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
18	Arrive home station or new operating site	30 min
19	Conduct home station or new operating site activities	2 hr
20	Final AAR	2 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	22 hr, 10 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

6. FRAGO. The unit commander issues the following FRAGO: “Alternative route A will be used for moving to TAA/RAA located at _____ (grid coordinates). Prepare to move within _____ hours.”

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainer and OCs.** Conduct this exercise with the unit commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. **Opposing Force.** None.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used.

d. **Maneuver Area.** A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

e. **Master Incident List.** During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Table 4-21 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-21. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-6

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
	NONE
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	NONE
RATIONS	
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-22 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-22. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-6

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Deploy and Redeploy by Logistics Support Vessel	55-2-0502	5-13
Prepare Unit for Nontactical Move	63-2-4807	5-71
Conduct Nontactical Road March	63-2-4808	5-75
Perform Redeployment Human Resources Actions	63-2-4814	5-103
Perform Redeployment Training Activities	63-2-4815	5-107
Perform Redeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4816	5-109
Perform Redeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4817	5-112
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Redeployment	63-2-4818	5-117

Table 4-22. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-6 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4819	5-126
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4820	5-133
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4821	5-138
Perform Home Station Activities	63-2-4822	5-142
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4823	5-146
Perform Demobilization Station Activities	63-2-4824	5-151
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Plan Unit Redeployment	63-2-4829	5-402

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. GENERAL. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks, which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. STRUCTURE. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. FORMAT. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.
- b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
- c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference, which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task, is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.
- d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.
- e. Commander/Leader Assessment. Unit leadership uses this to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
 - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
 - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
 - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Condition. A statement that describes the situation or environment, in which, the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task Standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. Every soldier should understand the task standard.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. An asterisk (*) identifies a leader task within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR Standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished -- not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. USE. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
<u>DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER</u>		
Conduct a Convoy by Vessel	55-2-0501	5-8
Deploy and Redeploy by Logistics Support Vessel	55-2-0502	5-13

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Prepare Unit to Move	63-2-4002	5-18
Conduct Tactical Road March	63-2-4003	5-24
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-2-4008	5-30
Occupy New Operating Site	63-2-4009	5-36
Set Up Unit Headquarters, Dining Facility, and Bivouac Areas	63-2-4550	5-40
Perform Deployment Alert Activities	63-2-4801	5-45
Perform Human Resources Predeployment Activities	63-2-4802	5-49
Perform Predeployment Training Activities	63-2-4803	5-53
Perform Predeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4804	5-55
Perform Predeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4805	5-59
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment	63-2-4806	5-64
Prepare Unit for Nontactical Move	63-2-4807	5-71
Conduct Nontactical Road March	63-2-4808	5-75
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4809	5-79
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4810	5-85
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4811	5-90
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment	63-2-4812	5-94
Prepare Equipment Reception Team for Tactical Road March	63-2-4813	5-99
Perform Redeployment Human Resources Actions	63-2-4814	5-103
Perform Redeployment Training Activities	63-2-4815	5-107
Perform Redeployment Supply Activities	63-2-4816	5-109
Perform Redeployment Maintenance Activities	63-2-4817	5-112
Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Redeployment	63-2-4818	5-117
Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4819	5-126

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4820	5-133
Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4821	5-138
Perform Home Station Activities	63-2-4822	5-142
Perform Sea Port of Debarkation Activities for Redeployment	63-2-4823	5-146
Perform Demobilization Station Activities	63-2-4824	5-151
Conduct Integration Activities	63-2-4825	5-155
Conduct Staging Activities	63-2-4826	5-157
<u>EMPLOY FIREPOWER</u>		
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	63-2-4307	5-161
Take Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	63-2-4308	5-165
<u>PROTECT THE FORCE</u>		
Defend Vessel Convoy	55-2-0498	5-168
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	63-2-4005	5-171
Defend Convoy Elements	63-2-4006	5-179
Set Up Unit Defense	63-2-4011	5-186
Prepare Unit for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Conditions	63-2-4013	5-191
Employ Operations Security Measures	63-2-4016	5-195
Perform Operational Decontamination	63-2-4018	5-200
Perform Thorough Decontamination	63-2-4019	5-202
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	63-2-4020	5-205
Defend Against a Level I Attack	63-2-4021	5-208
Prepare Unit for Level II/III Threat	63-2-4022	5-212
Conduct Hasty Displacement	63-2-4023	5-215

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Defend Unit Area	63-2-4024	5-218
Perform Withdrawal Under Fire	63-2-4025	5-223
Reorganize Unit Defense	63-2-4026	5-226
Execute Battle Handover	63-2-4027	5-229
Perform Area Damage Control Functions	63-2-4028	5-232
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	63-2-4226	5-235
Employ Physical Security Measures	63-2-4306	5-241
Respond to a Chemical Attack	63-2-4334	5-245
Destroy Supplies and Equipment	63-2-4522	5-250
<u>PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT</u>		
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.63-0001	5-254
Provide Food Service Support	10-2-0056	5-260
Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations	10-2-4513	5-269
Conduct Airdrop Resupply	10-2-C319	5-275
Provide Unit Supply Support	10-2-C320	5-277
Receive External Sling Load Resupply	10-2-C325	5-280
Conduct Watercraft Salvage Operations	55-2-0008	5-284
Transship (LO/RO or LO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0012	5-286
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway Operation	55-2-0013	5-289
Transship (RO/RO or RO/LO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in an Unimproved Port or Fixed Port of Embarkation	55-2-0017	5-292
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0018	5-296

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Transship (RO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Causeway Operation	55-2-0019	5-300
Support Shore-to-Shore Cargo Operations	55-2-0020	5-304
Transship (LO/RO) Cargo From Ship to Shore in a Bare Beach Operation	55-2-0021	5-306
Provide Vessel Support for Offshore Cargo Operations	55-2-0022	5-309
Perform Riverine Operations	55-2-0513	5-311
Set Up Logistics Operations Center	63-2-4012	5-315
Provide Human Resources Support	63-2-4015	5-318
Combat Battlefield Stress	63-2-4303	5-322
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	63-2-4304	5-326
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	63-2-4305	5-329
Perform Field Sanitation Functions	63-2-4315	5-332
Transport Casualties	63-2-4316	5-335
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-2-4326	5-339
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	63-2-4552	5-342
<u>EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL</u>		
Provide Production and Quality Control	55-2-1500	5-349
Provide Watercraft Repair Parts Supply Support	55-2-1501	5-353
Conduct Watercraft Support Maintenance Operations	55-2-1502	5-357
Prepare Vessel for Sea	55-2-1503	5-360
Conduct Marine Hull Salvage Repair Operations	55-2-1505	5-363
Conduct Vessel Operations	55-2-1508	5-366
Plan Unit Move	63-2-4001	5-369

Table 5-1. List of T&EO's (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Plan Occupation of New Area of Operations	63-2-4007	5-373
Plan Unit Defense	63-2-4010	5-376
Plan Area Damage Control Operations	63-2-4014	5-381
Maintain Communications	63-2-4017	5-384
Establish Communications	63-2-4040	5-390
Plan Unit Mobilization in a Peacetime Environment	63-2-4827	5-393
Plan Unit Deployment Activities Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-2-4828	5-398
Plan Unit Redeployment	63-2-4829	5-402

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Provides range (NM) and bearing (terrestrial) to nearest PT of land.</p> <p>e. Provides the status of sensitive items, maintenance, portable water, and fuel on board.</p> <p>f. Estimates time of arrival to destination.</p> <p>3. Vessel Master/Coxswain and crew maintains convoy discipline.</p> <p>a. Maintains safe speed as prescribed by convoy commander.</p> <p>b. Maintains vessel interval as prescribed by convoy commander.</p> <p>c. Crosses way points as scheduled.</p> <p>d. Reacts correctly to convoy commander's signals.</p> <p>e. Establishes surveillance that covers 360 degrees until move is completed.</p> <p>4. Convoy commander receives a report from the bridge watch officer that a vessel is having problems and conducts unscheduled halt(s).</p> <p>a. Alerts convoy column with prescribed distress signals or radio transmission.</p> <p>b. Receives operational report from senior engineer.</p> <p>c. Reports stoppage situation to higher HQ and harbormaster detachment LCC.</p> <p>d. Maintains prescribed vessel interval.</p> <p>e. Provides higher HQ and harbormaster detachment LCC with an updated SITREP and continues with mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Vessel engineman performs maintenance and repairs to the vessel engine department.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports to the bridge watch officer/coxswain all problems that have an adverse effect on the vessel handling. b. Performs troubleshooting procedures to identify problem and makes the required repairs. c. Requests towing when unable to repair vessel. <p>6. Convoy commander designates a vessel for recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Vessel master/coxswain will conducts a complete comprehensive evaluation and survey of the tow. b. Connects towing gear to the disable vessel and notifies bridge watch officer/Coxswain that the vessel is prepared for towing. c. Provides higher HQ with an updated situational report. d. Tows disabled vessel to safe haven. <p>7. Convoy commander conducts a night convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefs vessel master/coxswain and crew on night convoy operations. b. Provides visual adjustment period. c. Ensures vessels are prepared for blackout conditions. d. Maintains prescribed vessel distances. <p>8. Convoy commander's provides higher HQ and harbormaster LCC with vessel arrival report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Date and time vessels arrival at destination. b. Condition of crew and vessels. c. Condition of tow vessel. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Status of sensitive items, maintenance, portable water, and fuel on board.		
e. Forwards closing report to the higher HQ and habormaster detachment LCC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
551-733-2602	Compute Time, Distance, and Speed	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2603	Compute Compass Error	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2604	Convert Relative to True Bearings	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2606	Interpret Nautical Chart Information	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2608	Navigate a Vessel Utilizing Aids to Navigation	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2609	Plot Position on Nautical Chart	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2610	Predict Current	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2611	Predict Tide	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-2614	Keep Vessel Log on All Class "B" Vessels	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-4601	Obtain Weather Information Using Instruments and Observations	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-733-4620	Predict the Current's Velocity and Direction for a Given Location and Time	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
551-733-4621	Predict the Depth of Water for a Given Location and Time	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-2603	Assist Disabled Vessel With LCM-8	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-4607	Assist Disabled Vessel	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-736-3612	Supervise Anchoring and Weighing Anchor on ST	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-738-2601	Operate Vessel in Compliance With Inland Navigation Rules	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-738-4601	Apply Inland and International Navigational Rules of the Road	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. The mate assumes responsibility in the vessel master's absence.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures vessel masters orders are obeyed. b. Supervises the personnel working in the deck department (watercraft NCO and seaman). c. Navigates the vessel during appropriate watches until properly relieved. d. Notifies the vessel master of unusual circumstances. <p>3. The chief engineer supervises the operations of the engine department.</p> <p>NOTE: Overall responsible for engine department.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures efficient and economical operations of the engine room, auxiliary, and deck machinery. b. Coordinates with the deck watch to ensure the safe operation of the vessel. c. Ensures that the engine department is manned. d. Establishes and maintains the watch schedules for the engine room. e. Ensures that the engine room logbook is prepared. f. Maintains all applicable records, reports, repair parts, and onboard repair part inventory. g. Schedules, directs, and supervises the maintenance and repair of engine room machinery, electrical equipment, and deck machinery. h. Ensures that the engine signals from the bridge are properly answered, performed, and recorded into the bell log. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Promptly reports to the bridge watch officer all machinery causalities or problems that may have an adverse effect on the vessels handling.</p> <p>j. Reports defects that affect the operational readiness to the vessel master.</p> <p>4. The assistant engineer assumes responsibilities of the engine department in the chief engineer's absence.</p> <p>a. Ensures the chief engineer's orders are obeyed.</p> <p>b. Exercises immediate control over all engineer and engineman connected with the engine department.</p> <p>c. Notifies the vessel master and chief engineer of unusual circumstances.</p> <p>d. Performs the duties as the underway watch officer to ensure the safe and efficient operation of the vessel's machinery.</p> <p>e. Notifies the vessel master of unusual circumstances.</p> <p>5. The marine maintenance NCO supervises marine engine department personnel in all systems maintenance.</p> <p>a. Oversees posting of vessel logbooks, forms, and records.</p> <p>b. Assigns personnel to duty positions.</p> <p>c. Schedules equipment for calibration.</p> <p>d. Establishes maintenance priorities.</p> <p>e. Prepares marine vessel historical reports.</p> <p>6. The watercraft NCO (boatswain) supervises deck personnel (seaman).</p> <p>a. Operates under the supervision of the mate and assigns seaman to watches and details.</p> <p>b. Ensures mooring lines and fenders are properly stowed after getting underway.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Ensures maintenance of the deck gear.</p> <p>d. Reports operational conditions of all deck machinery and equipment to mate.</p> <p>e. Reports operational conditions of all deck machinery and equipment to mate.</p> <p>7. The emergency treatment NCO operates under the direct supervision of the vessel master.</p> <p>a. Records all medical emergencies.</p> <p>b. Provides medical care to all crewmembers aboard the vessel.</p> <p>c. Performs maintenance on all medical equipment.</p> <p>d. Informs the vessel master of all emergencies and the treatment administered.</p> <p>8. The food operations NCO operates the ship's galley and dining facility.</p> <p>a. Ensures food preparation, cleaning, and caring of utensils, stoves, refrigerators, and associated equipment.</p> <p>b. Ensures the cooks are complying with regulations regarding personal hygiene of food handlers.</p> <p>c. Supervises the cooks preparing and serving meals.</p> <p>d. Prepares requests for rations.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Lists capacities of all bridges and underpasses.</p> <p>g. Identifies locations of all culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</p> <p>h. Prepares overlay depicting route, obstructions, and key natural and man-made features using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Computes travel time and distance from a proposed SP to RP.</p> <p>j. Debriefs higher HQ staff element and unit commander upon return.</p> <p>2. Unit prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>a. Performs before-operations PMCS on all vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Corrects all vehicle and equipment discrepancies within the operator's capabilities IAW applicable TM.</p> <p>c. Reports all deficiencies beyond operator's capability to immediate supervisor.</p> <p>d. Removes all unit identification markings on vehicles.</p> <p>e. Covers all reflective surfaces of all vehicles or cargo with available materials.</p> <p>f. Hardens all vehicles using sandbags and/or other authorized materials.</p> <p>g. Places antennas at lowest height.</p> <p>h. Turns radio volume and squelch to lowest operational setting consistent with operational requirements.</p> <p>i. Sets radio to eliminate operating sounds and lights when moving at night.</p> <p>j. Verifies analog and/or digital devices are functioning properly.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Unit dismantles current operating site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Strikes tentage and camouflage nets IAW applicable TMs and within time specified in the displacement plan. b. Loads all designated equipment IAW unit load plans and within time specified in the displacement plan. c. Disguises all critical equipment and supplies with tarpaulins or any other authorized covering. d. Dismantles wire, analog, and/or digital communications devices, antennas, generators, and power cables within time specified in the displacement plan. e. Removes all signs of area occupation. f. Positions all stay-behind party vehicles and equipment in areas that provide cover and do not impede departure of main body vehicles. g. Dispatches advance/quartermen party NLT time specified in movement order. <p>*4. Convoy, serial, or march commander and leaders organize convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assign vehicle positions with the heavier, slower vehicles placed first. b. Assign digital device equipped control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assign recovery vehicle(s) positions where they can move to disabled vehicles without disrupting convoy movement. d. Assign hardened vehicle(s) with crew-served weapons interspersed throughout the convoy. e. Assign passenger locations where all unit personnel have a position and semi-automatic and automatic weapons are alternated throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks. f. Assign soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Assign sufficient number of recovery vehicles and mechanics to trail party element.</p> <p>h. Provide vehicle position listing with location of all vehicles to the trail party leader.</p> <p>i. Open analog and/or digital net(s) as specified in the SOI and movement order.</p> <p>j. Position combat lifesavers or medics throughout the convoy, serial, or march unit.</p> <p>*5. Convoy, serial, or march commander and leaders conduct pre-movement inspections.</p> <p>a. Inspect personnel, equipment, weapons, and ammunition for compliance with commander's guidance, unit TSOP, and higher HQ movement order.</p> <p>b. Inspect organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.</p> <p>c. Inspect vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.</p> <p>d. Verify operability of analog and/or digital communications devices.</p> <p>e. Forward personnel and equipment status to unit HQ and higher HQ staff element using analog or digital communications devices.</p> <p>*6. Convoy, serial or march commander conducts briefings for convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Provides strip maps to each vehicle driver.</p> <p>b. Briefs convoy chain of command.</p> <p>c. Briefs convoy route.</p> <p>d. Prescribes the rate of march and catch-up speeds.</p> <p>e. Briefs vehicle intervals.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Identifies scheduled halts.</p> <p>g. Briefs safety, accident, and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>h. Briefs immediate action security measures.</p> <p>i. Briefs blackout condition procedures.</p> <p>j. Identifies location of medical support.</p> <p>k. Identifies location of maintenance support.</p> <p>l. Provides location and identification of destination.</p> <p>m. Briefs arm/hand signals.</p> <p>n. Briefs communications frequencies and call signs for control personnel, security force commander, fire support elements, reserve security elements, and medical transportation support.</p> <p>7. Unit prepares to cross SP.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness using analog and/or digital communications devices.</p> <p>b. Positions all vehicles under overhead cover.</p> <p>c. Clears all individual and crew-served weapons.</p> <p>d. Posts air guards in positions designated by convoy commander.</p> <p>e. Posts security guards to maintain 360-degree surveillance.</p> <p>f. Forwards movement readiness report to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5805	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance Mission	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. March commander reports convoy information to higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>NOTE: All reports are made to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwards checkpoint clearance report as checkpoints are crossed. b. Reports all ground sightings that conflict with maps and map overlays. c. Forwards en route NBC information. d. Reports all threat sightings using SALUTE format. e. Employs correct SOI/SSI codes in all transmissions. <p>*3. March commander enforces march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Assumes position(s) along march route that provides command presence at points of decision for reaction to changing tactical situation. c. Enforces all movement policies defined in the TSOP and movement order, with emphasis on formation, distances, speeds, passing procedures, and halts. d. Adjusts formation distances and speed consistent with NBC, terrain, and light conditions. e. Enforces security measures, with emphasis on air guard's surveillance, manning of automatic weapons, and concealment of critical cargo. f. Communicates violations of march discipline, security procedures, or changes to current orders to unit leaders and operators by analog, digital, or visual signal communications. g. Enforces COMSEC measures, including radio silence periods IAW the movement order and SOI/SSI. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Unit employs march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains designated march speed specified in movement order or as prescribed by the convoy commander. b. Maintains proper vehicle interval as specified in movement order or as adjusted by the convoy commander. c. Adjusts formation distances and speed consistent with NBC, terrain, and light conditions. d. Dons eye protection goggles if driver or passenger is in a vehicle without cover or when windshield is lowered. e. Crosses all checkpoints as scheduled. f. Reacts correctly to convoy commander's arm/hand signals or instructions by analog and/or digital communications. g. Maintains ground and air surveillance that covers 360 degrees until movement is completed. h. Maintains communications security. <p>5. Unit conducts scheduled halt(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stops column at prescribed time and location. b. Moves vehicles off-road to positions that provide overhead cover while maintaining the prescribed interval between vehicles. c. Occupies hasty defensive positions with 360-degree protective coverage (passengers). d. Reports scheduled halt to the battalion CP. e. Performs during-operation PMCS on vehicles (operators). f. Inspects vehicle loads for safety and security. g. Begins departure at specified time in the movement order. h. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>6. Unit conducts unscheduled halt(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerts march column with prescribed arm/hand signal. b. Reports halt and circumstances immediately to higher HQ staff element by analog and/or digital communications. c. Moves vehicles off the road while maintaining the prescribed interval between vehicles. d. Occupies hasty fighting position with 360-degree protective coverage. e. Resumes march as soon as reason for halt is rectified. f. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. <p>7. Trail party recovers disabled vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Posts guard to maintain surveillance until recovery operation is completed. b. Inspects disabled vehicle for repairability. c. Repairs disabled vehicle, when possible. d. Tows disabled vehicle to applicable maintenance activity. e. Reports vehicle status to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications. <p>8. Unit conducts a night convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefs drivers on night conditions. b. Provides visual adjustment period if march began during daylight. c. Prepares vehicles for blackout conditions IAW the TSOP. d. Maintains prescribed interval between vehicles. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Wears night vision goggles (selected personnel).</p> <p>f. Wears regular eye protection goggles (all other personnel).</p> <p>g. Employs ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>9. Unit conducts convoy through an urban area.</p> <p>a. Verifies all weight, height, and width restrictions along route of march.</p> <p>b. Employs close column formation.</p> <p>c. Obeys traffic control directions unless escorted by military or HN police.</p> <p>d. Employs directional guides at all critical intersections.</p> <p>10. Convoy commander monitors unit crossing RP.</p> <p>a. Verifies that lead vehicle has crossed RP at specified time.</p> <p>b. Verifies that vehicles that have crossed RP.</p> <p>c. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 21-24-SMCT
551-721-4326	Perform Duties as Convoy Commander	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NON-PERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (63-OPFOR-1001)

CONDITION: OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Deliver chemical agents in low lying and/or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting C2 system. 3. Restrict enemy units movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict casualties on enemy forces.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (63-OPFOR-1003)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

STANDARD: 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Report actions to superiors.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Advance/quartering party assists in securing the entire higher HQ area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumes designated MOPP level before entering new area. b. Provides required number of personnel for initial security teams. c. Provides required personnel and equipment to conduct NBC surveys of assigned area. <p>3. Advance/quartering party secures the unit's new AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Places OPs on probable avenues of approach consistent with the available personnel. b. Parks vehicles and trailers in covered positions with mirrors turned toward the ground. c. Conducts NBC survey of the entire assigned unit area. <p>NOTE: If survey team(s) monitor high levels of contamination, area should be evacuated immediately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Conducts sweep of unit area to locate all mines, booby traps, and other signs of threat presence. <p>*4. Advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts unit area site reconnaissance with subelement leaders, pointing out assigned areas and traffic circulation IAW layout and traffic plans. b. Verifies movement of subelements into their respective areas to ensure compliance with layout plan. c. Establishes internal communications system using runner until wire communications have been established. d. Enforces OPSEC measures during area preparation. e. Establishes unit area entrance and exit points with unit personnel as guards. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Assigns to subelements the task of blocking all other possible entrance and exit points into the unit area.</p> <p>g. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>h. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>5. Advance/quartermaster party leader supervises area preparation tasks.</p> <p>a. Marks location of CP IAW the unit layout plan.</p> <p>b. Marks location of bivouac and administrative areas IAW the layout plan.</p> <p>c. Lays communication wire from CP to all subelements.</p> <p>d. Marks unit area traffic direction IAW the traffic plan.</p> <p>e. Erects required tentage at locations IAW the layout plan.</p> <p>f. Sets up radio antenna(s) in locations as required by the layout plan.</p> <p>g. Marks vehicle positions allowing maximum dispersion consistent with size of area and tactical situation.</p> <p>h. Marks subelements defensive boundaries IAW the security plan.</p> <p>i. Erects barriers to block all unauthorized entrances and exits into and out of the CP area.</p> <p>j. Employs camouflage and concealment measures consistent with tactical situation.</p> <p>k. Employs noise and light discipline measures.</p> <p>l. Employs communication security measures.</p> <p>m. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>n. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>6. Advance/quartering party prepares an urbanized area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects buildings within assigned area that provide maximum cover, concealment, and protection. b. Selects building for CP that provides a line of sight for antenna(s). c. Clears all assigned buildings of booby traps and any unnecessary items. d. Erects barriers to close off or channel personnel and vehicles into designated areas. e. Establishes OPs and defensive positions in upper stories of buildings. f. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. g. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>*7. Advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies guide pickup points using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. b. Briefs ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC. c. Monitors subelement guides activities to ensure compliance with guidance by party leader and the higher HQ and unit TSOP. d. Enforces counter-surveillance measures. <p>8. Advance/quartering party performs guide functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Guides elements into assigned positions without having vehicles stop in exposed areas. b. Employs prearranged signals IAW the higher HQ and unit TSOP. c. Parks one vehicle at a time during darkness or reduced visibility. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Employs filtered flashlights during darkness or reduced visibility.		
e. Employs counter-surveillance measures during reception activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-0513	Select Temporary Fighting Positions	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0804	Perform Surveillance Without the Aid of Electronic Devices	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Reacts correctly to filtered flashlight signals of guide.</p> <p>d. Maintains noise and light discipline.</p> <p>e. Takes action to minimize dust and exhaust smoke.</p> <p>3. Vehicle operators perform initial camouflage measures.</p> <p>a. Reduce reflections by turning mirrors toward the ground.</p> <p>b. Employ natural terrain patterns, available overhead cover, and shadows.</p> <p>c. Cover windshields with available natural or artificial materials.</p> <p>d. Remove vehicle tracks by using available sweeping materials.</p> <p>e. Perform after-operations PMCS.</p> <p>4. Unit occupies initial defensive positions (designated personnel only).</p> <p>a. Occupies positions as directed by advance/quartermaster party leader.</p> <p>b. Prepares hasty fighting positions that provide frontal protection from direct fire and are at least half a meter (18 inches) deep.</p> <p>c. Positions automatic weapons on likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>d. Positions individual weapons to protect flanks of automatic weapons and to provide interlocking fires.</p> <p>e. Employs hasty camouflage measures to initial security positions.</p> <p>f. Employs light and noise discipline along defensive line.</p> <p>g. Employs correct challenge and password techniques.</p> <p>h. Employs safety measures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>i. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*5. Commander finalizes unit layout plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adjusts layout plan as terrain and tactical considerations require change. b. Records adjustment(s) on analog and/or digital map overlay(s). c. Identifies camouflage requirements based on terrain features. d. Identifies essential tasks to be completed. e. Briefs sub-element leaders on final layout plan and tasks to be performed. f. Enforces safety measures IAW TSOP and publications. g. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit HQ personnel set up the unit administrative area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupy positions required for local area security IAW unit TSOP. b. Position equipment and tentage according to layout plan. c. Establish unit communications net using analog and/or digital communications. d. Enter higher HQ communications nets IAW current communications instructions and TSOP. e. Identify tentative mortuary affairs and EPW collection points. f. Mark vehicle parking areas. g. Mark traffic flow pattern. h. Camouflage vehicles, shelters and equipment. i. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. j. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures. <p>3. Unit HQ personnel set up the unit supply area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up required shelters and equipment. b. Secure weapons and ammunition. c. Position supply vehicles. d. Camouflage vehicles and equipment. e. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. f. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Unit personnel set up the field feeding facility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up mobile kitchen trailer IAW TM 10-7360-206-13. b. Inspect field feeding equipment for serviceability. c. Set up mess kit laundry or sanitation center IAW FM 10-23. d. Set up handwashing facilities. e. Prepare for the disposal of liquid waste, garbage, and rubbish IAW FM 4-25.12. f. Camouflage vehicles, shelters, and equipment. g. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. h. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures. <p>5. Unit personnel set up maintenance facilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up maintenance work areas. b. Set up maintenance equipment. c. Set up waste disposal areas. d. Position maintenance vehicles. e. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publication. f. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures. <p>6. Unit personnel set up bivouac area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Locate area away from traffic flow and roadways. b. Mark sleep areas. c. Pitch individual tentage. d. Set up commander's facilities. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Camouflage all bivouac areas. f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. g. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures. 7. Unit personnel set up field sanitation facilities. a. Construct latrine(s). b. Place screen or canvas around latrine(s). c. Construct simple handwashing device for each latrine. d. Set up unit water source. e. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. f. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Monitors security of unit area for compliance with security plan.</p> <p>g. Monitors recall of unit personnel to ensure recall time standards are met and personnel accountability is accomplished IAW recall plan.</p> <p>h. Submits reports to higher HQ IAW recall plan, security plan, deployment OPORD, and movement plan using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Briefs higher HQ commander and staff on status of deployment alert activities.</p> <p>2. Unit HQ performs recalls personnel accountability functions.</p> <p>a. Initiates recall procedures IAW recall plan.</p> <p>b. Sets up central check-in IAW recall plan.</p> <p>c. Checks personnel as they arrive, to ensure only personnel listed on current access rosters enter the unit area.</p> <p>d. Annotates recall roster to indicate personnel are present for duty as they arrive.</p> <p>e. Computes percent present for duty IAW recall plan.</p> <p>f. Briefs commander on present-for-duty status as recall progresses.</p> <p>g. Disestablishes control check-in point when 100 percent of unit are present or accounted for.</p> <p>*3. UMO assembles deployment teams.</p> <p>a. Identifies unit deployment team requirements by reviewing movement plan.</p> <p>b. Confirms personnel are available for designated deployment teams.</p> <p>c. Requests commander assign additional and/or replacement deployment team members, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Briefs deployment teams on their duties and responsibilities IAW the movement plan.</p> <p>e. Briefs commander on status of deployment teams.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders supervise unit element alert activities.</p> <p>a. Monitor arrival of unit element personnel to ensure all personnel are accounted for.</p> <p>b. Supervise establishment of security of assigned area IAW security plan.</p> <p>c. Brief personnel on deployment.</p> <p>*5. Section chiefs and/or team leaders supervise alert activities.</p> <p>a. Inspect personnel as they arrive to ensure all have required clothing and personal gear.</p> <p>b. Inspect alert bags to ensure all personal gear is present and serviceable.</p> <p>c. Assign personnel to security posts IAW security plan.</p> <p>d. Brief unit element leaders on alert status.</p> <p>6. Unit performs recall activities.</p> <p>a. Relays alert notification, as required.</p> <p>b. Reports for duty unit HQ IAW recall plan.</p> <p>c. Repairs or replaces personal gear, as required.</p> <p>d. Performs security functions, as required.</p> <p>e. Provides dependents with information on deployment, as permitted.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Directs XO to update family assistance plan, as required.</p> <p>h. Requests that the S1 appoint pay agents during deployment, if necessary, using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Coordinates with S1 Section to close out fund account using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>j. Coordinates through higher HQ and port commander to identify number of supercargoes (unit personnel traveling with unit equipment) authorized and POC for supercargoes using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>NOTE: Performance step "j" is not used by the IBCT.</p> <p>k. Briefs battalion commander on status of SRP activities.</p> <p>2. Unit HQ processes SRP records.</p> <p>a. Delivers unit SRP records to SRP site.</p> <p>b. Verifies that 100 percent of deploying personnel have processed.</p> <p>c. Returns SRP records to unit HQ.</p> <p>d. Delivers SRP records to battalion rear detachment prior to departure.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ performs personnel replacement functions.</p> <p>a. Identifies nondeployable personnel by reviewing monthly USR, ISG daily report, and SRP results.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for replacement personnel using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Recommends assignment of replacement personnel to commander.</p> <p>d. Assigns replacement personnel IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>e. Updates the family assistance plan, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Unit HQ monitors unit SRP activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Publishes unit SRP schedule based on movement plan, S1 section SRP schedule, and commander's guidance. b. Distributes unit SRP schedule to platoons and sections. c. Monitors SRP to ensure activities are completed IAW SRP schedule. d. Coordinates with the higher HQ staff element for additional SRP using analog and/or digital communications, as required. e. Briefs commander on SRP status. <p>*5. Unit leaders supervise personnel and administrative SRP activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct personnel to complete SRP IAW SRP schedule. b. Designate personnel to assist contact teams in SRP activities, as required. c. Monitor SRP to ensure activities are completed IAW SRP schedule. d. Coordinate with the UMO/NCO for additional SRP, as required. e. Identify nondeployable personnel. f. Coordinate personnel replacement with unit HQ. g. Monitor securing of POVs and personal property for compliance with movement plan and commander's instructions. h. Brief personnel on family assistance plan. i. Brief commander on results of SRP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. Unit personnel perform SRP activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Perform SRP contact team functions, as directed. b. Complete processing activities, as directed. c. Secure POVs and personal property IAW movement plan and commander's instructions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Training officer/NCO supervise predeployment training activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Develops training schedule based on movement plan, deployment OPORD, specialized training requirements identified by higher HQ and commander's guidance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Coordinates training support with the higher HQ staff personnel using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Provides training schedule to S2/S3 and unit leader, as appropriate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Monitors training to ensure appropriate training is provided to personnel.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Briefs commander on status of predeployment training.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders perform predeployment training activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Coordinates with UMO for required training support using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Conducts training IAW training schedule, if required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Annotates training results on individual and team training records.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Briefs higher HQ commander and higher HQ staff personnel on supply status, as required.</p> <p>g. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>2. Unit elements perform predeployment supply activities.</p> <p>a. Identify shortages of supplies and equipment by conducting inventories and inspections.</p> <p>b. Inventory soldier's personal belongings that are designated to remain in the unit area.</p> <p>c. Secure personal belongings remaining in the unit area.</p> <p>d. Submit requests for supplies and equipment to supply sergeant IAW TSOP, as required.</p> <p>e. Issue individual basic loads, as required.</p> <p>f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ provides supply support.</p> <p>a. Submits requests to servicing SSA to upgrade FAD on all requisitions already in the system.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with the S4 for additional DODAACs to be requested, as needed, for the rear detachment and deploying detachments using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Submits changes of the "ship-to" address for the unit DODAAC to the servicing SSA, to ensure correct routing of requested supplies to the unit's deployment address using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Submits requests for issue of personal clothing and equipment to S4 section IAW AR 700-84 using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Submits request for basic loads and required supplies and equipment to S4 Section IAW Movement Plan and TSOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Submits request for eyeglasses, inserts, and hearing aids to the S4 section using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>g. Requests supplies to support movement operations (BBPCT, dunnage, and pallet covers).</p> <p>h. Draws basic loads IAW S4 section's instructions.</p> <p>i. Coordinates with S4 section to resolve outstanding requisitions using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with commander or S4 section for transportation and MHE support using analog and/or digital communications to pick-up, issue, and/or pack deployment supplies, if necessary.</p> <p>k. Inspects float and/or replacement equipment for serviceability.</p> <p>l. Signs for float and/or replacement equipment.</p> <p>m. Issues supplies and equipment IAW TSOP, as required.</p> <p>n. Secures unissued supplies and equipment IAW TSOP.</p> <p>o. Turns in equipment, supplies, and hazardous material to appropriate facility, as required.</p> <p>p. Prepares hand receipt annex and/or transfer documentation for unit property being transferred.</p> <p>q. Prepares backup of all automated supply systems prior to deployment.</p> <p>r. Briefs commander on deployment supply status.</p> <p>s. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>t. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>h. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. Motor officer/motor sergeant supervises predeployment maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Identifies unit operational readiness levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports, PMCS, and predeployment maintenance checks.</p> <p>b. Prepares MCSR IAW AR 220-1 and AR 700-138.</p> <p>c. Submits current MCSR to commander.</p> <p>d. Submits request for direct support maintenance to commander, as required.</p> <p>e. Submits request for controlled exchanges to commander for approval.</p> <p>f. Designates unit maintenance personnel to assist direct support maintenance element IAW maintenance SOP and S4 section and commander's instructions.</p> <p>g. Directs calibration of tools, if required.</p> <p>h. Verifies PLL inventory by conducting spot checks.</p> <p>i. Submits request for PLL replenishment to S4 section using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>j. Verifies completion of repairs by reviewing maintenance records.</p> <p>k. Coordinates with S4 section to identify status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>l. Coordinates with S4 section to evacuate nondeployable vehicles and equipment to support maintenance using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>m. Verifies unit member's civilian and military driver's licenses and equipment licenses for validation and reissue, as needed.</p> <p>n. Prepares backup of all automated maintenance systems prior to deployment.</p> <p>o. Briefs the commander on maintenance status of vehicles and equipment, as required.</p> <p>p. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>q. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Maintenance unit performs field maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Calibrates tools, as required.</p> <p>b. Inspects equipment IAW appropriate operator and organizational maintenance TMs.</p> <p>c. Records all deficiencies on equipment inspection worksheets.</p> <p>d. Corrects unit-level maintenance deficiencies.</p> <p>e. Corrects DS-level maintenance deficiencies.</p> <p>f. Requests required repair parts from PLL clerk.</p> <p>g. Repairs equipment IAW applicable TM(s).</p> <p>h. Requests approval for controlled exchange through motor officer or sergeant when required repair parts are not available.</p> <p>i. Performs controlled exchange IAW motor officer or sergeant's instructions.</p> <p>j. Performs final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</p> <p>k. Conducts inventory of PLL to confirm shortages IAW PLL listing.</p> <p>l. Submits request for PLL replenishment to supporting SSA, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>m. Performs technical inspections of float and/or replacement equipment IAW appropriate TMs and manufacturer's instructions.</p> <p>n. Releases equipment to appropriate unit elements.</p> <p>o. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>p. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit HQ conducts transactions with maintenance support elements.</p> <p>a. Identifies vehicles and equipment that require maintenance support element support.</p> <p>b. Prepares required documentation for submission to maintenance support element.</p> <p>c. Delivers vehicles and equipment to maintenance support element.</p> <p>d. Picks up equipment from maintenance support element upon notification repairs are completed.</p> <p>e. Notifies owning element to pick up vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders supervise predeployment operator maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Monitor performance of PMCS and predeployment maintenance for compliance with Maintenance SOP, appropriate TM, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Inspect vehicles, weapons, and equipment to ensure compliance with Maintenance SOP, appropriate TM and commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Provide input for MCSR to motor officer, as required.</p> <p>d. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>e. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. Unit performs predeployment operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performs PMCS IAW appropriate TM(s). b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities. c. Checks vehicle load plan to ensure required tools and equipment are on hand. d. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. e. Employs environmental stewardship program protection procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Provides unit leaders with disposition instructions for equipment not being deployed.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with S4 for transportation support to the APOE or SPOE using analog and/or digital communications, if necessary.</p> <p>h. Inspects area to ensure all excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been turned in or placed in a designated holding area.</p> <p>i. Notifies higher HQ S2/S3 when vehicles and containers are loaded and ready to move using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises vehicle and equipment preparation activities.</p> <p>a. Updates AUDEL to reflect vehicles, equipment, and supplies to be deployed based on physical inventory and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Updates AUDEL to reflect actual weights based on results of weighing and any dimensions beyond those listed in current technical publications for equipment TOE LIN/INDEX NO.</p> <p>c. Inputs updated AUDEL into the ITO or field movement control element TC-ACCIS station.</p> <p>NOTE: When verified by the UMO, the updated AUDEL becomes the DEL produced by TC-ACCIS.</p> <p>d. Provides UMC and/or S4 Section with information on oversize and overweight vehicles, equipment, and cargo requiring special handling, as required.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with UMC for DEL, BBPCT material requirements lists, vehicle/rail loading plans and schedules, special hauling permit requests, military shipping labels, and convoy clearance requests produced by TC-ACCIS using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with S4 Section for RF tags for ITV of sensitive/classified cargo, IAW directives from higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with S4 Section for packing materials, weighing scales, MHE, containers, inserts, pallets, and other equipment preparation and loading materials using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Coordinates with S4 for customs inspection per unit SOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Provides unit leaders with deployment forms, shipping labels, and documents, as required.</p> <p>j. Coordinates container pick-up with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>k. Provide special instructions to Packing and Crating Teams, if necessary.</p> <p>l. Provides container packing schedule to unit leaders.</p> <p>m. Identifies transportation support requirements by reviewing Movement Plan and current vehicle status reports.</p> <p>n. Coordinates with S4 Section for movement of vehicles and equipment to rail loading site.</p> <p>o. Provides rail loading plan to Rail Loading Team Chief.</p> <p>p. Provides Rail Loading Team proper tools to conduct rail loadout.</p> <p>q. Coordinates with UMC for port call message and verification of Movement Plan A/SPOE requirements and procedures.</p> <p>r. Conducts risk assessment considering factors such as time, duration, and cargo to ensure the mission is safely completed.</p> <p>s. Briefs commander on status of preparation of vehicles and equipment for deployment.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders supervise preparation of unit elements for deployment.</p> <p>a. Verify adequate space has been allowed for personnel items and secondary loads by reviewing loading plans.</p> <p>b. Revise loading plans, as required.</p> <p>c. Monitor packing and loading for compliance with Deployment SOP, Movement Plan, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>d. Inspect area to ensure all equipment to be deployed has been packed and/or loaded.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Inspect area to ensure all excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been turned in or placed in a designated holding area.</p> <p>f. Inspect internal loads to ensure loads are secure and in compliance with loading plans.</p> <p>g. Notify UMO of any load plan revisions using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*4. UMO maintains an up-to-date AUDEL.</p> <p>a. Conducts physical inventory of vehicles and equipment to be deployed to verify accuracy of AUDEL.</p> <p>b. Revises AUDEL, as required.</p> <p>c. Submits AUDEL changes to UMC, if necessary.</p> <p>5. Packing and Crating Teams prepare equipment for deployment.</p> <p>a. Pack containers IAW loading plans, DEL, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Pack hazardous materials IAW Deployment SOP, UMO's instructions, and applicable publications.</p> <p>c. Prepare container packing lists and shipping documents IAW UMO's instructions and applicable publications.</p> <p>d. Distribute container packing lists and shipping documents IAW UMO's instructions and applicable publications.</p> <p>e. Place military shipping labels and designated markings on containers IAW Movement Plan, Deployment SOP, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>f. Assist container pick-up crew in loading operations, as required.</p> <p>g. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>h. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>6. Unit prepares vehicles, equipment, and personal gear for deployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Places equipment not being deployed in designated storage area IAW Movement Plan and commander's instructions. b. Turns in excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies to supply sergeant IAW Deployment SOP and/or commander's instructions. c. Packs personal gear IAW Movement Plan. d. Marks and/or tags vehicles, equipment, and personal gear IAW Deployment SOP, Movement Plan, and UMO's instructions. e. Attaches RF/AIT tags and applies military shipping labels on vehicles and equipment IAW Movement Plan and UMO's instructions. f. Moves equipment to be packed in containers, to the container packing area IAW UMO's instructions. g. Loads vehicles IAW Deployment SOP, Movement Plan, loading plans, and UMO's instructions. h. Moves vehicles to designated area for marshaling or rail loading site, as directed. i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. <p>7. Weighing and Marking Team weigh and marks vehicles for deployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sets up weighing and marking area in designated area IAW Deployment SOP. b. Guides vehicles onto scales as they arrive. c. Identifies vehicle gross weight. d. Identifies vehicle axle weights (air movement only). e. Computes vehicle center of balance based on axle weights (air movement only). f. Marks center of balance on vehicles IAW Deployment SOP, DOD Directive 4500.9, and UMO's instructions (air movement only). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Reports gross weights for each deploying vehicle to UMO.</p> <p>h. Disestablishes weighing and marking area.</p> <p>i. Returns vehicle weighing scales IAW UMO or owning facility officials' instructions.</p> <p>*8. Rail Loading Team OIC/NCOIC supervises rail loading activities.</p> <p>a. Conducts safety briefing for all unit personnel at the rail loading site IAW local procedures.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with UMO for rail loading plans.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with installation UMC to identify special rail loading requirements.</p> <p>d. Verifies the presence of all rail guards by conducting roll call, if required.</p> <p>e. Verifies the presence of manifested vehicles and equipment by conducting physical inventory.</p> <p>f. Inspects vehicles and equipment for military shipping labels, proper markings, and adequacy of BBPCT procedures.</p> <p>g. Provides a cargo manifest to conductor, if required.</p> <p>h. Notifies commander when rail loading is complete.</p> <p>i. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>9. Rail Loading Team performs rail loading.</p> <p>a. Stages vehicles IAW rail loading plan.</p> <p>b. Loads vehicles and equipment on rail cars IAW rail loading plan and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>c. Secures vehicles and equipment IAW rail loading plan and UMO's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Notifies Rail Loading Team Chief when rail loading is complete. e. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. f. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Notifies higher HQ staff element that unit is ready to move using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Briefs commander on preparations for movement.</p> <p>2. Unit prepares vehicles and equipment for movement to A/SPOE.</p> <p>a. Performs before-operations PMCS on all vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Corrects maintenance discrepancies within the operator's capabilities IAW applicable TM.</p> <p>c. Reports all maintenance deficiencies beyond operator's capability to immediate supervisor.</p> <p>d. Corrects loading deficiencies IAW loading plan, if necessary.</p> <p>e. Recomputes vehicle center of balance, if necessary (APOE only).</p> <p>f. Re-marks center of balance on vehicle, if necessary (APOE only).</p> <p>g. Marks vehicles for movement to A/SPOE IAW DOD Directive 4500.9, FM 55-30, Movement Order, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>h. Places military shipping labels on vehicles and equipment IAW Movement Plan and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>*3. Convoy, Serial, and March commanders and leaders organize convoy for movement to A/SPOE.</p> <p>a. Assign vehicle positions with the heavier, slower vehicles placed first.</p> <p>b. Assign recovery vehicle(s) positions, where they can move to disabled vehicles without disrupting convoy movement.</p> <p>NOTE: Unit will assign MTS equipped vehicles as control vehicles, if available.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Assign sufficient number of recovery vehicles and mechanics to trail party element.</p> <p>d. Provide trail maintenance party with minimum quantities of packaged POL supplies and Class IX ASL/PLL parts to support the convoy IAW FM 55-65.</p> <p>e. Provide vehicle position listing with location of all vehicles to the trail party leader.</p> <p>f. Open radio net(s) as specified in the Movement Plan.</p> <p>*4. Convoy, Serial, and March commanders and leaders conduct premovement inspections.</p> <p>a. Inspect personnel and their equipment for compliance with Movement Directive, Movement Plan, and commander's instructions.</p> <p>b. Inspect organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.</p> <p>c. Inspect vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.</p> <p>d. Forward personnel and equipment status to unit HQ and S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*5. Convoy commander conducts briefings for convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Provides strip maps to each vehicle driver.</p> <p>b. Briefs convoy chain of command.</p> <p>c. Briefs convoy route.</p> <p>d. Prescribes the rate of march and catch-up speeds.</p> <p>e. Briefs vehicle intervals.</p> <p>f. Identifies scheduled halts.</p> <p>g. Briefs safety, accident, and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>h. Identifies location of maintenance support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Provides location and identification of destination. j. Briefs arm/hand signals and SOI, including radio frequencies and call signs. 6. Unit prepares to cross SP. a. Stages vehicles for convoy IAW convoy commander's instructions. b. Notifies convoy commander that vehicles are ready to cross SP for convoy to A/SPOE using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. Convoy commander enforces march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Places directional guides at all critical intersections along route, if necessary. b. Assumes position(s) along march route that provides command presence at critical turns or other points of decision. c. Enforces all movement policies defined in the movement plan, with emphasis on formation, distances, speeds, passing procedures, and halts. d. Adjusts formation distances and speed consistent with roads and speed limits. e. Enforces security measures to protect equipment and cargo during halts. f. Communicates to unit leaders and operators any violations of march discipline or changes to current orders, using analog and/or digital communications or proper visual signals. <p>4. Unit employs march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains designated march speed specified in movement plan or as prescribed by the convoy commander. b. Maintains proper vehicle interval as specified in movement plan or as adjusted by the convoy, serial, or march commander. c. Obeys vehicle driving regulations and safe driving procedures based on conditions. d. Crosses all checkpoints as scheduled. e. Reacts correctly to convoy, serial, or march commander's arm/hand signals. <p>5. Unit conducts scheduled halt(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stops column at prescribed time and location. b. Reports scheduled halt to higher HQ staff element, if appropriate, using analog or digital communications. c. Performs during-operation PMCS on vehicles (operators). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Inspects vehicle loads for safety and security.</p> <p>e. Begins departure at specified time in the movement plan or convoy commander's instructions.</p> <p>f. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications, if appropriate.</p> <p>6. Unit conducts unscheduled halt(s).</p> <p>a. Alerts march column with prescribed arm/hand signal.</p> <p>b. Reports halt and circumstances to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications, if appropriate.</p> <p>c. Resumes march as soon as reason for halt is rectified.</p> <p>d. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications, if appropriate.</p> <p>7. Trail party recovers disabled vehicle.</p> <p>a. Inspects disabled vehicle for repairability.</p> <p>b. Repairs disabled vehicle, when possible.</p> <p>c. Reports vehicle status to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Tows disabled vehicle to applicable maintenance facility or destination based on convoy commander's instructions.</p> <p>*8. Convoy commander monitors unit crossing RP.</p> <p>a. Verifies that lead vehicle has crossed RP at specified time.</p> <p>b. Verifies the vehicles that have crossed RP.</p> <p>c. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Briefs UMO on POC for maintenance support.</p> <p>g. Directs team to off-load and inspect equipment arriving by rail.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with PSA to identify number of supercargoes authorized and POC for supercargoes.</p> <p>i. Coordinates with supercargoes to ensure they are prepared for sea movement, to include proper orders and equipment.</p> <p>j. Briefs supercargoes on boarding schedule, responsibilities, and POC during sea movement.</p> <p>k. Conducts acceptance inspection of vehicles, equipment, and cargo with PSA officials.</p> <p>l. Directs team to correct deficiencies noted during PSA acceptance inspection.</p> <p>m. Transfers custody of vehicles, equipment, and cargo to SPOE officials.</p> <p>n. Briefs the higher HQ commander or designated representative on status of SPOE activities.</p> <p>2. Supercargoes representative performs SPOE activities.</p> <p>a. Reports to port commander's representative IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Performs SPOE activities IAW port commander's instructions.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with vessel POC for instructions on responsibilities and accommodations.</p> <p>d. Loads baggage IAW instructions from vessel POC.</p> <p>e. Boards ship IAW instructions from vessel POC.</p> <p>f. Employs safety procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. UMO coordinates SPOE activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with PSA officials to verify loading sequence of vehicles and equipment (ship stow plan). b. Monitors PSA acceptance inspection of vehicles and cargo to determine deficiencies. c. Coordinates with maintenance support POC for disposition of excess fuel, POL products, and maintenance support, as necessary. d. Inspects military shipping labels and markings on vehicles and equipment for compliance with deployment SOP and PSA officials' instructions. e. Coordinates with PSA officials to correct deficiencies in military shipping labels and markings on vehicles and equipment. f. Briefs commander and/or SPOE team OIC on status of SPOE activities. <p>*4. UMO coordinates rail off-loading.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with PSA officials and intermediate command UMO for rail off-loading schedule and requirements. b. Designates personnel to assist in rail off-loading activities. c. Briefs personnel designated to perform rail off-loading activities on schedule and requirements. d. Supervises rail off-loading activities. e. Assumes custody of equipment deployed by rail by signing appropriate shipping documents. f. Notifies SPOE team leaders equipment deployed by rail has arrived in the MA. g. Briefs commander/SPOE team OIC on status of rail off-loading activities. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. SPOE team performs rail off-loading operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports to the railhead IAW UMO's instructions. b. Off-loads equipment from railcars IAW PSA officials' instructions. c. Moves equipment to SPOE MA IAW PSA officials' instructions. d. Employs safety procedures. e. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>6. SPOE team performs SPOE MA maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performs after operation PMCS IAW deployment SOP and appropriate TM. b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability. c. Checks vehicles, cargo, and personal gear for completeness, damage, proper markings, and compliance with loading plans. d. Conducts final preparation of vehicles and equipment IAW deployment SOP. e. Adjusts vehicle fuel levels IAW movement plan and PSA officials' instructions. f. Turns in excess fuel and POL products IAW UMO's instructions. g. Verifies placement of placards, labels, and certification documents on hazardous material IAW deployment SOP, movement plan, and PSA officials' instructions. h. Corrects deficiencies on vehicles, cargo, and personal gear IAW unit leader's instructions. i. Moves to SPOE SA, as directed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>j. Employs safety procedures.</p> <p>k. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*7. SPOE team leaders supervise final preparation of vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for deployment.</p> <p>a. Inspect military shipping labels and markings on vehicles, cargo and equipment for compliance with deployment SOP, port call message and UMO instructions.</p> <p>b. Inspect vehicles and cargo to ensure deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p> <p>c. Coordinate maintenance assistance with commander and/or SPOE team OIC.</p> <p>d. Enforce safety procedures.</p> <p>e. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>8. SPOE team performs final preparation of vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for deployment.</p> <p>a. Moves vehicles and equipment to SPOE SA, as directed.</p> <p>b. Stages vehicles for loading IAW UMO's and PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>c. Corrects deficiencies in military shipping labels and markings on vehicles and equipment IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>d. Drives vehicles to call forward area, as directed by PSA officials.</p> <p>e. Employs safety procedures.</p> <p>f. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*9. UMO updates transportation documentation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies DEL by conducting physical inspection of equipment. b. Updates DEL, as required. c. Verifies the presence of supercargoes by conducting roll call. d. Updates supercargo manifest, as required. <p>10. SPOE Team returns to unit area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assembles personnel for return to unit area IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. b. Reports to transportation loading area IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. c. Loads baggage on vehicles IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. d. Boards transportation to return to unit IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Directs unit to conduct final preparation of deploying vehicles and equipment IAW deployment SOP and DOD Directive 4500.9.</p> <p>f. Conducts acceptance inspection of vehicles and equipment with DACG officials at the alert holding area.</p> <p>g. Directs unit to correct deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection.</p> <p>h. Transfers custody of equipment and cargo to DACG officials IAW deployment SOP.</p> <p>i. Briefs the higher HQ commander on status of APOE activities.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises APOE activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with DACG and/or supporting installation officials for transportation, maintenance, logistics, and other support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with DACG officials to verify APOE movement schedules, procedures, and requirements using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S4 representative to ensure adequate shoring, dunnage, and floor protection are on hand and readily available for loading using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Verifies unit vehicles, equipment, cargo, and secondary loads are properly marked and prepared for airlift IAW TALCE/DACG instructions.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with DACG to verify loading sequence of vehicles and equipment using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Verifies that deficiencies noted during DACG acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p> <p>g. Verifies the presence of all manifested personnel by conducting roll call.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Provides verified personnel and cargo manifest to DACG at the alert holding area.</p> <p>i. Provides load teams to load and tie down unit equipment under supervision of the DACG or loadmaster.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders supervise final preparation of vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for deployment.</p> <p>a. Inspect vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for completeness, damage, and compliance with loading plans IAW MA plan.</p> <p>b. Inspect vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for proper marking and documentation IAW MA plan.</p> <p>c. Inspect vehicles and cargo to ensure deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p> <p>d. Coordinate with the UMO for maintenance assistance, as required.</p> <p>e. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>f. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit performs APOE MA activities.</p> <p>a. Performs after operations PMCS IAW deployment SOP and appropriate TMs.</p> <p>b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability to repair.</p> <p>c. Conducts final preparation of vehicles and equipment IAW DOD Directive 4500.9 and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>d. Adjusts vehicle fuel levels IAW TM 38-250 and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>e. Turns in excess fuel IAW UMO/NCO's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Corrects deficiencies on vehicles, cargo, and personal gear IAW unit leaders' instructions.</p> <p>g. Corrects deficiencies on placement of placards, labels, and certification documents on hazardous material IAW deployment SOP, movement plan, TM 38-250, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>h. Moves to APOE alert holding area, as directed.</p> <p>i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>j. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>5. Unit performs APOE alert holding area activities.</p> <p>a. Corrects deficiencies in shipping documents, markings, custom labels, and decontamination tags on vehicles and equipment IAW deployment SOP and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Drives vehicles to call forward area, as directed.</p> <p>6. Unit performs APOE passenger activities.</p> <p>a. Reports to designated location for DACG safety and anti-terrorism briefing IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Provides baggage detail, as directed, to load unit baggage on aircraft.</p> <p>c. Completes security screen IAW DACG officials' instructions.</p> <p>d. Boards aircraft IAW loadmaster's instructions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Coordinates with higher HQ representative or PMCT for transportation support to APOD MA, SPOD holding area, and TSB using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative for tactical intelligence, security requirements, and movement schedule using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Briefs unit leaders on tactical situation, security requirements, movement schedule, and special APOD requirements.</p> <p>g. Directs unit leaders to establish security IAW S2/S3's instructions.</p> <p>h. Directs unit leaders to prepare unit for movement TSB.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises unit movement activities at APOD.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with AACG for off-loading and movement schedules using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Briefs unit leaders on off-loading and movement schedules.</p> <p>c. Provides AACG, supporting installation officials, and S2/S3 representative a copy of DEL.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with S4 representatives for fuel and supplies for road movements.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S2/S3 representatives for convoy routes, maps, and timetable for road movements to SPOD and TSB.</p> <p>f. Briefs commander on APOD activities.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders supervise unit activities at APOD.</p> <p>a. Inspect personnel, weapons, sensitive items, and MOPP gear for accountability as they exit aircraft.</p> <p>b. Brief personnel on location of holding and MA, movement requirements, and special APOD requirements.</p> <p>c. Establish security IAW commander's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Designate personnel to assist in off-loading aircraft, as required.</p> <p>e. Inspect personnel and personal gear at the holding area and MA to ensure all personnel have arrived with required personal gear and baggage.</p> <p>f. Brief commander on unit activities at APOD.</p> <p>g. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>h. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit HQ prepares soldiers for movement to TSB.</p> <p>NOTE: This task step does not apply to the Interim Brigade.</p> <p>a. Issues individual supplies as needed, such as ammunition, food, water, health, and comfort items.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with the AACG for life support for unit personnel in the transit holding area, as needed.</p> <p>c. Maintains daily personnel accountability.</p> <p>5. Main body performs unit activities at the APOD.</p> <p>a. Disembarks aircraft IAW loadmaster's instructions.</p> <p>b. Assembles in APOD holding area, as directed.</p> <p>c. Performs off-loading activities IAW AACG officials and loadmaster's instructions.</p> <p>d. Performs security functions, as directed.</p> <p>e. Moves to APOD MA IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>f. Performs security functions, as directed.</p> <p>g. Inspects vehicles and equipment to ensure all equipment is off-loaded and serviceable.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Notifies unit leaders of vehicle and/or equipment deficiencies that cannot be corrected.</p> <p>i. Reconfigures vehicles and cargo for road movement, if necessary.</p> <p>j. Loads baggage on transportation for movement to SPOD holding area (ERT) or TSB (main body), as directed.</p> <p>k. Boards transportation for movement to SPOD holding area or TSB, as directed.</p> <p>l. Fuels vehicles for convoy to TSB, if appropriate.</p> <p>m. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>n. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Assembles equipment reception team in holding area.</p> <p>e. Conducts acceptance inspection with PSA officials.</p> <p>f. Notifies battalion commander and S4 representative of missing or damaged equipment.</p> <p>g. Assumes custody of equipment and cargo IAW S4 representative and PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with S4 representative for transportation support to TSB, if required.</p> <p>i. Coordinates with S2/S3 and MCT for movement schedules to the TSB.</p> <p>j. Verifies arrival, morale, and welfare of supercargoes.</p> <p>k. Reestablishes accountability and responsibility for supercargoes.</p> <p>l. Directs convoy and rail loading parties to proceed to rail loading or road convoy MA IAW S2/S3 and MCT movement instructions.</p> <p>m. Monitors preparation of equipment for road convoy or rail movement to ensure compliance with TSOP.</p> <p>n. Briefs unit leaders on SPOD requirements.</p> <p>o. Advises unit commander and battalion representative on SPOD activities, as required.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises unit activities at SPOD.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with S4 representative to identify off-loading schedules, location of holding areas and marshalling areas, location of PREPO vehicles and materiel, availability and location of BBPCT, and other SPOD information, as required</p> <p>b. Briefs personnel on off-loading schedules, drawing PREPO vehicles and materiel, special SPOD requirements, and location of MA.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative to identify equipment, loading times and sites, and unit loading requirements to prepare designated equipment for rail movement to TSB.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Coordinates with S2/S3 representatives for convoy routes, maps, tactical intelligence, and timetable for road move to TSB.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S4 representatives for fuel, ammunition, and supplies for road move to TSB.</p> <p>f. Provides rail-loading plan to rail loading team chief.</p> <p>g. Monitors rail loading procedures to ensure compliance with MCT's instructions.</p> <p>h. Monitors preparation of equipment for road convoy to ensure compliance with TSOP.</p> <p>i. Briefs equipment reception party on rail-loading and convoy requirements.</p> <p>j. Briefs commander on SPOD activities.</p> <p>k. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>l. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Supercargoes perform SPOD activities.</p> <p>a. Disembark ship IAW vessel POC's instructions.</p> <p>b. Report to equipment reception team OIC/NCOIC for instructions.</p> <p>4. Equipment reception team performs equipment reception activities.</p> <p>a. Offloads vehicles IAW PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>b. Inspects equipment to ensure all equipment is operational.</p> <p>c. Moves vehicles and materiel from PREPO locations to rail or convoy MAs.</p> <p>d. Moves unit vehicles and cargo to SPOD rail or convoy MAs.</p> <p>e. Performs before operations PMCS on all vehicles and equipment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Corrects all vehicle and equipment discrepancies within the operator's capabilities IAW applicable TM.</p> <p>g. Reports all deficiencies beyond operator's capability to immediate supervisor.</p> <p>h. Reconfigures vehicles and cargo for road movement, if necessary.</p> <p>i. Fuels vehicles for convoy to TSB, if appropriate.</p> <p>j. Draws weapons, ammunition, and other tactical supplies from S4 representative, if necessary.</p> <p>k. Notifies UMO that vehicles are offloaded and operational.</p> <p>l. Employs safety procedures.</p> <p>m. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*5. Rail loading team chief supervises rail-loading activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with UMO for rail-loading plans.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with UMO to identify special rail-loading requirements.</p> <p>c. Verifies the presence of all rail guards by conducting roll call.</p> <p>d. Verifies the presence of manifested vehicles and equipment by conducting physical inventory.</p> <p>e. Provides a copy of the personnel and cargo manifest to conductor.</p> <p>f. Notifies commander when rail loading is completed.</p> <p>g. Enforces safety procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. Rail loading team performs rail loading. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stages vehicles IAW rail-loading plan. b. Loads vehicles and equipment on railcars IAW rail-loading plan and UMO's instructions. c. Secures vehicles and equipment IAW rail-loading plan and UMO's instructions. d. Notifies rail-loading Team Chief when rail loading is completed. e. Employs safety procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Sets squelch setting "on" and call-light "off" when operating at night.</p> <p>g. Attaches RF tags to vehicles, as available, IAW local directives.</p> <p>*2. Convoy commander and leaders organize convoy.</p> <p>a. Assign vehicle positions with the heavier, slower vehicles placed first.</p> <p>b. Assign control vehicles in convoy without setting a pattern.</p> <p>NOTE: Convoy commander assigns FBCB2 or MTS equipped vehicles as control vehicles, if available.</p> <p>c. Assign recovery vehicle(s) positions where they can move to disabled vehicles without disrupting convoy movement.</p> <p>d. Assign hardened vehicle(s) with crew-served weapons interspersed throughout the convoy.</p> <p>e. Assign passenger locations where all unit personnel have a position and semi-automatic and automatic weapons are alternated throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks.</p> <p>f. Assign soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</p> <p>g. Assign sufficient number of recovery vehicles and mechanics to assign to trail party element.</p> <p>h. Provide vehicle position listing with locations of all vehicles to the trail party leader.</p> <p>i. Open radio net(s) as specified in the movement order.</p> <p>*3. Convoy commander and leaders conduct premovement inspections.</p> <p>a. Inspect personnel and their equipment for compliance with commander's guidance, movement order, and TSOP.</p> <p>b. Inspect organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Inspect vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security.</p> <p>d. Forward personnel and equipment status to commander and higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>NOTE: Convoy commander forwards status reports using FBCB2 or MTS, if equipped.</p> <p>*4. Convoy commander conducts briefings for convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Provides analog or digital strip maps to each vehicle driver, as applicable.</p> <p>b. Briefs convoy chain of command.</p> <p>c. Briefs convoy route.</p> <p>d. Prescribes the rate of march and catch-up speeds.</p> <p>e. Briefs vehicle intervals.</p> <p>f. Identifies scheduled halts, to include convoy support centers.</p> <p>g. Briefs safety, accident, and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>h. Briefs immediate action security measures.</p> <p>i. Briefs blackout condition procedures.</p> <p>j. Identifies location of medical support.</p> <p>k. Identifies location of maintenance support.</p> <p>l. Provides location and identification of destination.</p> <p>m. Briefs arm/hand signals.</p> <p>n. Briefs radio frequencies and call signs for control personnel, fire support elements, and medical evacuation support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Equipment Reception Team prepares to cross SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions all vehicles IAW convoy commander's instructions. b. Clears all individual and crew-served weapons. c. Posts air guards in positions designated by convoy commander. d. Posts security guards to maintain 360-degree surveillance. e. Forwards movement readiness report to S2/S3. <p>NOTE: Team leader forwards reports using FBCB2, if equipped.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Directs the unit HQ to develop a unit personnel and administrative processing schedule.</p> <p>f. Forwards list of personnel unable to redeploy to S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Forwards list of personnel redeploying as individuals using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Directs personnel to complete personnel and administrative requirements for redeployment.</p> <p>i. Approves or disapproves award and decoration recommendations, as appropriate.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with S1 for personnel and administrative support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>k. Briefs higher HQ commander on status of personnel and administrative actions.</p> <p>2. Unit HQ supervises redeployment personnel and administrative actions.</p> <p>a. Develops unit personnel and administrative processing schedule based on the redeployment movement plan, S1 SRP schedule processing, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Distributes unit personnel and administrative processing schedule to platoons and sections.</p> <p>c. Monitors personnel and administrative processing to ensure personnel complete actions IAW schedule.</p> <p>d. Verifies that redeployment records are updated prior to soldier's departure from theater.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ performs personnel redeployment processing functions.</p> <p>a. Identifies COA for soldiers not eligible for redeployment, to include temporary gaining command, transfer procedures, and administrative requirements.</p> <p>b. Provides list of soldiers' eligible for redeployment and those scheduled to return as individuals.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Provides redeploying soldiers medical, dental, and personnel records for redeployment processing.</p> <p>d. Provides necessary forms to unit personnel for redeployment processing.</p> <p>e. Dispatches all soldier's updated records back to the unit's home station before the soldier departs.</p> <p>f. Sends records to home station using means of transportation different from that of the soldiers'.</p> <p>g. Completes personnel and administrative requirements for deployment IAW higher HQ directives.</p> <p>h. Prepares tentative passenger manifest.</p> <p>i. Processes recommendations for decorations and awards IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with the S1 Section for personnel and administrative support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>k. Inputs status changes and other actions to pay and personnel systems.</p> <p>l. Coordinates with the S1 Section for personnel and administrative support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>m. Briefs commander on personnel and administrative actions, as required.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders supervise personnel and administrative actions.</p> <p>a. Direct personnel to complete personnel and administrative actions, as required.</p> <p>b. Monitor personnel and administrative processing to ensure personnel complete actions IAW schedule.</p> <p>c. Submit performance reports, award and decoration recommendations, and other personnel actions to the commander for approval/certification, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Coordinate with unit HQ for personnel and administrative support, as required.</p> <p>e. Submit records and reports to unit HQ IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan and commander's instructions using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Brief commander on personnel and administrative actions.</p> <p>g. Brief personnel on personnel and administrative requirements.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Training Officer/NCO supervises redeployment training activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Develops training schedule based on Redeployment OPORD, specialized training requirements identified by higher HQ, and commander's guidance, such as customs, USDA requirements, weapons control, and stress management.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Coordinates with S2/S3 for training support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Provides training schedule to S2/S3 and unit leaders, as appropriate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Provides stress control and family support reorientation briefings IAW higher HQ directives.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Monitors training to ensure appropriate training are provided to personnel.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">f. Briefs commander on status of redeployment training.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders perform redeployment training activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Coordinate with UMO for required training support.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Conduct training IAW training schedule, if required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Annotate training results on individual and team training records.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Directs supply section to turn-in excess supplies and equipment IAW TSOP and S4 Section's instructions.</p> <p>h. Inspects area and facilities to ensure excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been turned in.</p> <p>i. Briefs higher HQ commander and the higher HQ staff personnel on supply status, as required.</p> <p>2. Unit elements perform redeployment supply activities.</p> <p>a. Identify shortages of vehicles, supplies, and equipment by conducting inventories and reviewing DEL.</p> <p>b. Identify shortages of clothing and personal equipment by inventorying OCIE.</p> <p>c. Submit requests for vehicles, supplies, and equipment to supply section IAW TSOP and commander's instructions using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>e. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ provides supply support.</p> <p>a. Provides a copy of the DEL to platoons and sections, as required.</p> <p>b. Submits request for supplies and equipment to S4 Section IAW TSOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S4 Section to resolve, cancel or validate outstanding requisitions using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Submits changes of the "ship to" address to reflect home station address for all outstanding requisitions.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with commander or S4 Section for transportation and MHE support to turn in, pick up, issue, and/or pack ammunition, equipment, and supplies using analog and/or digital communications, if necessary.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Coordinates with S4 for customs and USDA inspection schedule and procedures using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Inspects issued vehicles and equipment for serviceability and completeness.</p> <p>h. Issues vehicles, equipment, and supplies to appropriate platoons/sections IAW TSOP and commander's instructions.</p> <p>i. Secures unissued supplies and equipment IAW TSOP.</p> <p>j. Turns in equipment, supplies, and hazardous material to designated facility, as appropriate.</p> <p>k. Briefs commander on supply status.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Prioritizes repair of vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>i. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. Motor officer and/or motor sergeant supervise redeployment maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Identify unit operational readiness levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports, PMCS, and redeployment maintenance checks.</p> <p>b. Prepare MCSR IAW AR 220-1 and AR 700-138.</p> <p>c. Submit current MCSR to commander.</p> <p>d. Submit request for CRTs to commander, as required.</p> <p>e. Submit request for controlled exchanges to commander for approval.</p> <p>f. Designate unit maintenance personnel to assist MSTs IAW Maintenance SOP, S4 Section, and commander's instructions.</p> <p>g. Direct calibration of tools, if required.</p> <p>h. Verify PLL inventory by conducting spot checks.</p> <p>i. Verify completion of repairs by reviewing maintenance records.</p> <p>j. Coordinate with S4 Section to identify status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>k. Coordinate with S4 Section for disposition instructions for nonrepairable vehicles using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>l. Brief the commander on maintenance status of vehicles and equipment, as required.</p> <p>m. Issue and/or reissue military drivers and equipment licenses to unit personnel, as needed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>n. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>o. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ performs organizational maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Calibrates tools, as required.</p> <p>b. Inspects equipment IAW appropriate operator and organizational maintenance TMs.</p> <p>c. Records all deficiencies on equipment inspection worksheets.</p> <p>d. Corrects unit-level maintenance deficiencies.</p> <p>e. Forwards requests for DS maintenance to supporting maintenance facility using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Requests required repair parts from PLL clerk.</p> <p>g. Repairs equipment IAW applicable TM(s).</p> <p>h. Requests approval for controlled exchange through motor officer when required repair parts are not available.</p> <p>i. Performs controlled exchange IAW the motor officer or sergeant instructions.</p> <p>j. Performs final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</p> <p>k. Conducts inventory of PLL to confirm shortages IAW PLL listing.</p> <p>l. Submits request for PLL replenishment to motor sergeant, as required.</p> <p>m. Performs technical inspections of replacement equipment IAW appropriate TMs and manufacturer's instructions.</p> <p>n. Releases equipment to appropriate platoon or section.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>o. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>p. Employs environmental stewardship procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit HQ conducts transactions with CRTs.</p> <p>a. Identifies vehicles and equipment that require CRT support.</p> <p>b. Prepares required documentation for submission to CRT.</p> <p>c. Delivers vehicles and equipment to CRT.</p> <p>d. Picks up equipment from CRT upon notification repairs are completed.</p> <p>e. Notifies owning element to pick up vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders supervise redeployment operator maintenance activities.</p> <p>a. Monitor performance of PMCS and redeployment maintenance for compliance with the Redeployment Movement Plan, Maintenance SOP, appropriate TM, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Inspect vehicles, weapons, and equipment to ensure compliance with Maintenance SOP, appropriate TMs, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Provide input for MCSR to motor officer, as required.</p> <p>d. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>e. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>6. Unit performs redeployment operator maintenance.</p> <p>a. Performs PMCS IAW appropriate TM(s).</p> <p>b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.		
d. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Coordinates with S4 for transportation support to A/SPOE using analog and/or digital communications, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Inspects area to ensure all excess vehicles, equipment and supplies has been turned-in.</p> <p>g. Notifies S2/S3 when vehicles and containers are loaded and ready to move using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises vehicle and equipment preparation activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with MCA/MCT TC-ACCIS site for DEL, military shipping labels, and documents.</p> <p>NOTE: If the unit did not deploy with a DEL produced by TC-ACCIS, a DEL will be generated based on the unit property book and vehicle and secondary load lists.</p> <p>b. Updates AUDEL to reflect vehicles, equipment, and supplies to be redeployed based on physical inventory, operational status, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Updates AUDEL to reflect actual weights based on results of weighing.</p> <p>d. Inputs updated AUDEL into the MCA/MCT TC-ACCIS station.</p> <p>e. Provides MCA/MCT and/or S4 section with information on oversize and overweight vehicles, equipment, and cargo requiring special handling using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with TC-ACCIS site for DEL, BBPCT material requirements lists, vehicle/rail loading plans and schedules, special hauling permit requests, military shipping labels, and convoy clearance requests produced by TC-ACCIS using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Coordinates with S4 section for packing materials, weighing scales, MHE, containers, inserts, pallets, and other equipment preparation and loading materials using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with S4 section for RF tags for sensitive/classified cargo using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>i. Coordinates with USDA and customs contact team leaders for vehicle and equipment packing, loading, and cleaning instructions early in the preparation process using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>j. Provides unit leaders with a cleaning schedule for vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>k. Provides unit leaders with redeployment forms, shipping labels, and documents, as required.</p> <p>l. Coordinates container pick-up with S4 section using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>m. Provides special instructions to packing and crating teams, if necessary.</p> <p>n. Provides container packing schedule to unit leaders and customs contact team.</p> <p>o. Identifies transportation support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement plan and current vehicle status reports.</p> <p>p. Coordinates with S4 section for movement of vehicles and equipment to rail-loading site using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>q. Provides rail-loading plan to rail-loading team chief.</p> <p>r. Provides rail loading team proper tools to conduct rail-loadout.</p> <p>s. Coordinates with S4 or MCA/MCT officials for port call message and verification of redeployment movement plan A/SPOE requirements and procedures using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>t. Briefs commander on status of preparation of vehicles and equipment for deployment.</p> <p>u. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>v. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders supervise preparation of unit elements for redeployment.</p> <p>a. Verify that adequate space has been allowed for personal items and secondary loads by reviewing loading plans.</p> <p>b. Revise loading plans, as required.</p> <p>c. Monitor packing and loading for compliance with the redeployment movement plan and UMO and customs officials' instructions.</p> <p>d. Direct personnel to deliver vehicles and equipment to the vehicle and equipment cleaning site IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>e. Monitor vehicle and equipment cleaning operations to ensure vehicles and equipment are cleaned IAW the redeployment movement plan and USDA officials' instructions.</p> <p>f. Inspect area to ensure all equipment to be redeployed has been packed and/or loaded.</p> <p>g. Inspect area to ensure all excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies has been turned in.</p> <p>h. Inspect internal loads to ensure loads are secure and in compliance with loading plans.</p> <p>i. Notify UMO of any load plan revisions.</p> <p>j. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>k. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*4. UMO maintains an up-to-date AUEL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts physical inventory of vehicles and equipment to be redeployed to verify accuracy of AUEL. b. Revises AUEL, as required. c. Submits AUEL changes to MCA/MCT TC-ACCIS site, if necessary. <p>5. Packing and crating teams prepare equipment for redeployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Pack containers IAW loading plans, DEL, and UMO and USDA and customs officials' instructions. b. Pack hazardous materials IAW the redeployment movement plan and UMO, USDA, and customs officials' instructions. c. Prepare container packing lists and shipping documents IAW UMO's instructions. d. Distribute container packing lists and shipping documents IAW UMO and USDA and customs officials' instructions. e. Mark containers IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan, UMO, USDA, and customs officials' instructions. f. Assist container pick-up crew in loading operations, as required. g. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. h. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>6. Vehicle and equipment cleaning team clean vehicles and equipment for redeployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Guides vehicles into cleaning site, as directed by cleaning site officials. b. Clean vehicles and equipment IAW and USDA officials' instructions. c. Reports completion of vehicle and equipment cleaning operations to UMO. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>e. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>7. Unit prepares vehicles, equipment and personal gear for redeployment.</p> <p>a. Turns in excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies to supply sergeant.</p> <p>b. Packs personal gear IAW movement plan and customs officials' instructions.</p> <p>c. Marks and/or tags personal gear and equipment IAW the redeployment movement plan and UMO and customs officials' instructions.</p> <p>d. Moves equipment to be packed in containers to the container packing area IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>e. Loads vehicles IAW the redeployment movement plan, loading plans and UMO and customs officials' instructions.</p> <p>f. Places RF tags on sensitive/classified cargo and/or vehicles as directed by higher HQ.</p> <p>g. Delivers vehicles and equipment to the vehicle and equipment-cleaning site, as directed.</p> <p>h. Moves vehicles to unit MA, as directed.</p> <p>i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>8. Weighing and Marking Team weigh and mark vehicles for deployment.</p> <p>a. Sets up weighing and marking area in designated area IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>b. Guides vehicles onto scales as they arrive.</p> <p>c. Identifies vehicle gross weight.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Identifies vehicle axle weights (air movement only).</p> <p>e. Computes vehicle center of balance based on axle weights (air movement only).</p> <p>f. Marks center of balance on vehicles IAW DOD Directive 4500.9, and UMO's instructions (air movement only).</p> <p>g. Reports gross weights for each deploying vehicle to UMO.</p> <p>h. Disestablishes weighing and marking area.</p> <p>i. Returns vehicle-weighing scales IAW owning facility or UMO's instructions.</p> <p>9. Unit prepares vehicles and equipment for movement to A/SPOE.</p> <p>a. Stages vehicles for convoy to A/SPOE or rail loading site IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Corrects loading deficiencies IAW loading plan, if necessary.</p> <p>c. Recomputes center of balance, if necessary (air movement only).</p> <p>d. Re-marks center of balance on vehicles, if necessary (air movement only).</p> <p>e. Marks vehicles for movement to A/SPOE IAW FM 55-30, UMO, USDA, and customs officials' instructions.</p> <p>f. Places military shipping labels on vehicles and equipment IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>g. Moves designated vehicles and equipment to the rail loading site IAW movement plan and UMO's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Prepares convoy for movement to A/SPOE.</p> <p>NOTE: Depending on tactical situation, see task steps 2 through 5 of Task 63-2-4808 (Conduct Nontactical Road March) or Task 63-2-4003 (Conduct Tactical Road March) for detailed convoy preparation procedures.</p> <p>i. Notifies UMO that vehicles are ready to cross SP for convoy to A/SPOE.</p> <p>*10. Rail Loading Team OIC/NCOIC supervises rail-loading activities.</p> <p>a. Conducts safety briefing for unit personnel at the rail loading site IAW governing regulations and local procedures.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with UMO for rail-loading plans.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with UMO to identify special rail-loading requirements.</p> <p>d. Verifies the presence of rail guards by conducting roll call, if required.</p> <p>e. Verifies the presence of manifested vehicles and equipment by conducting physical inventory.</p> <p>f. Provides cargo manifest to conductor.</p> <p>g. Inspects vehicles and equipment for military shipping labels and proper markings.</p> <p>h. Notifies commander when rail loading is complete, if required.</p> <p>i. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>11. Rail loading team performs rail loading.</p> <p>a. Stages vehicles IAW rail-loading plan.</p> <p>b. Loads vehicles and equipment on railcars IAW rail-loading plan and UMO's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Secures vehicles and equipment IAW rail loading plan and UMO's instructions. d. Notifies rail-loading team OIC/NCOIC when rail-loading is complete. e. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. f. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Briefs team leaders on SPOE movement schedules, procedures, safety guidelines, and requirements.</p> <p>f. Directs team to off-load and inspect equipment arriving by rail.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with PSA to identify number of supercargoes authorized and POC for supercargoes using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with supercargoes to ensure they are prepared for redeployment by sea movement, to include proper orders and equipment.</p> <p>i. Briefs supercargoes on boarding schedule, responsibilities, and POC during sea movement.</p> <p>j. Conducts acceptance inspection of vehicles, equipment, and cargo with PSA officials.</p> <p>k. Directs team to correct deficiencies noted during PSA acceptance inspection.</p> <p>l. Transfers custody of vehicles, equipment, and cargo to SPOE officials.</p> <p>m. Briefs the higher HQ commander or designated representative on status of SPOE activities.</p> <p>2. Supercargoes representative performs SPOE activities.</p> <p>a. Reports to port commander's representative IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Performs SPOE activities IAW port commander's instructions.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with vessel POC for instructions on responsibilities and accommodations.</p> <p>d. Reports to the customs inspection site IAW port commander's instructions.</p> <p>e. Loads baggage IAW instructions from vessel POC.</p> <p>f. Boards ship IAW instructions from vessel POC.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. UMO coordinates SPOE activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with PSA officials to verify loading sequence of vehicles and equipment (ship stow plan). b. Monitors PSA acceptance inspection of vehicles and cargo to identify deficiencies. c. Coordinates with maintenance support POC for disposition of excess fuel and POL products and maintenance support, as necessary. d. Coordinates with PSA officials for vehicle cleaning support and location of SPOE sterile area. e. Inspects shipping documents and labels, markings, customs labels, and decontamination tags on vehicles and equipment for compliance with MCA/MCT, customs, USDA officials' instructions, and TM 38-250 instructions. f. Coordinates with MCA/MCT, USDA, and/or customs officials to correct deficiencies in shipping documents and labels, customs labels, and decontamination tags. g. Briefs commander and/or SPOE team OIC on status of SPOE activities. h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. i. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>*4. UMO coordinates rail off-loading.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with PSA officials for rail off-loading schedule and requirements. b. Designates personnel to assist in rail off-loading activities. c. Briefs personnel designated to assist in rail off-loading activities on schedule and requirements. d. Supervises rail off-loading activities. e. Assumes custody of equipment deployed by rail by signing appropriate shipping documents. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Notifies SPOE team leaders equipment deployed by rail has arrived in the MA.</p> <p>g. Briefs commander and/or SPOE team OIC on status of rail off-loading activities.</p> <p>h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>i. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>5. SPOE Team performs rail off-loading operations.</p> <p>a. Reports to the railhead IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Offloads equipment from railcars IAW PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>c. Moves equipment to SPOE MA IAW PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>d. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>e. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>6. SPOE Team performs SPOE MA maintenance.</p> <p>a. Performs after-operations PMCS IAW the redeployment movement plan and appropriate TMs.</p> <p>b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability.</p> <p>c. Checks vehicles, cargo, and personal gear for completeness, damage, proper markings, contraband, and compliance with loading plans.</p> <p>d. Conducts final preparation of vehicles and equipment IAW the redeployment movement plan.</p> <p>e. Adjusts vehicle fuel levels IAW port call message and PSA officials and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>f. Turns in excess fuel and POL products IAW UMO's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Verifies placement of placards, labels, and certification documents on hazardous material IAW PSA officials and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>h. Corrects deficiencies on vehicles, cargo, and personal gear IAW SPOE team leader's instructions.</p> <p>i. Moves to SPOE vehicle and equipment cleaning site, as directed.</p> <p>j. Employs safety procedures IAW with TSOP and publications.</p> <p>k. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>7. SPOE team performs USDA cleaning activities.</p> <p>a. Performs vehicle cleaning IAW instructions from cleaning site personnel.</p> <p>b. Corrects USDA inspection deficiencies IAW USDA officials' instructions.</p> <p>c. Moves vehicles and equipment to designated sterile area IAW unit leader's instructions.</p> <p>d. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>e. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*8. SPOE team leaders supervise final preparation of vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for redeployment by sealift.</p> <p>a. Inspect military shipping labels, markings, customs labels, and decontamination tags on vehicles and equipment for compliance with redeployment SOP, port call message, and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>b. Monitor customs inspection to ensure that deficiencies are corrected.</p> <p>c. Inspect vehicles and cargo to ensure deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Coordinate maintenance assistance with Commander and/or SPOE team OIC.</p> <p>e. Enforce safety procedures.</p> <p>f. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>9. SPOE team performs final preparation of vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for redeployment.</p> <p>a. Moves vehicles and equipment to SPOE SA, as directed.</p> <p>b. Stages vehicles for loading IAW UMO and PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>c. Corrects deficiencies in shipping documents, markings, customs labels, and decontamination tags on vehicles and equipment IAW UMO and PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>d. Corrects deficiencies noted during customs inspection.</p> <p>e. Drives vehicles, as directed by PSA officials, to call forward area.</p> <p>f. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*10. UMO updates transportation documentation.</p> <p>a. Verifies DEL by conducting physical inspection of equipment.</p> <p>b. Updates DEL, as required.</p> <p>c. Verifies the presence of supercargoes by conducting roll call.</p> <p>d. Updates supercargo manifest, as required.</p> <p>e. Provides changes to DEL and supercargo manifest to PSA officials, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
11. SPOE team returns to unit area. a. Assembles personnel for return to unit area IAW commander or SPOE team OIC's instructions. b. Reports to transportation loading area IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. c. Loads baggage on vehicles IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions. d. Boards transportation to return to unit IAW SPOE team OIC's instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Directs unit to conduct final preparation of vehicles and equipment IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan and DOD Directive 4500.9.</p> <p>f. Conducts acceptance inspection of vehicles and equipment with DACG officials at the alert holding area.</p> <p>g. Directs unit to correct deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection.</p> <p>h. Transfers custody of equipment and cargo to DACG officials IAW DOD 4500.9-R.</p> <p>i. Briefs the higher HQ commander or designated representative on status of APOE activities.</p> <p>*2. UMO/NCO supervises APOE activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with S4 and/or DACG officials for transportation, maintenance, logistics, and other support using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative, PMCT, or DACG to verify APOE movement schedules, procedures, and requirements using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S4 representative to ensure adequate shoring, dunnage, and floor protection is on hand and readily available for loading using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Verifies unit vehicles, equipment, cargo, and secondary loads are properly marked and prepared for redeployment by air IAW TALCE/DACG.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative, site coordinator and/or DACG representative for equipment cleaning support using analog and/or digital communications, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with DACG to verify loading sequence of vehicles and equipment using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Designates personnel to verify weight and center of balance marks, if required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Briefs designated personnel on weight and center of balance marks verification requirements.</p> <p>i. Verifies that deficiencies noted during DACG acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p> <p>j. Verifies the presence of all manifested personnel by conducting roll call.</p> <p>k. Provides verified personnel and cargo manifest to DACG at the alert holding area.</p> <p>l. Provides load teams to load and tie down unit equipment under supervision of the DACG or loadmaster.</p> <p>3. Unit performs APOE MA activities.</p> <p>a. Performs after-operations PMCS IAW appropriate TMs.</p> <p>b. Notifies supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability to repair.</p> <p>c. Conducts final preparation of vehicles and equipment IAW DOD Directive 4500.9 and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>d. Adjusts vehicle fuel levels IAW TM 38-250 and DACG officials' instructions.</p> <p>e. Turns in excess fuel and POL products IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>f. Corrects deficiencies on vehicles, cargo, and personal gear IAW unit leaders' instructions.</p> <p>g. Corrects deficiencies on placement of placards, labels, and certification documents on hazardous material IAW UMO/NCO, unit leaders, and customs and USDA officials' instructions, if necessary.</p> <p>h. Moves vehicles and equipment to APOE cleaning site or alert holding area, as directed.</p> <p>i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Unit processes vehicles and equipment through the APOE cleaning site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Delivers vehicles to APOE cleaning site IAW UMO's instructions. b. Performs vehicle cleaning IAW DACG and USDA officials' instructions. c. Returns vehicles and equipment to unit area IAW unit leaders' instructions. <p>*5. Unit leaders supervise final preparation of vehicles, equipment, sensitive items, cargo, and personal gear for redeployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspect shipping documents, markings, customs labels, and decontamination tags on vehicles, equipment, cargo, and personal gear for compliance with the Redeployment Movement Plan and UMO's instructions. b. Monitor customs inspection to ensure deficiencies are corrected. c. Inspect vehicles and cargo to ensure deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection have been corrected. d. Coordinate with the UMO for assistance in correcting shipping documentation and maintenance deficiencies, as required. e. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. f. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>6. Unit performs APOE alert holding area activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Drives vehicles to call forward area, as directed. b. Boards transportation to terminal, as directed. c. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. Unit performs APOE passenger activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports to designated location for safety and anti-terrorism briefing, security screen, and customs inspection IAW UMO's instructions. b. Remains in quarantined area IAW DACG officials' instructions. c. Provides baggage detail, as directed, to load unit baggage on aircraft. d. Boards aircraft IAW loadmaster's instructions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. UMO coordinates APOD activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with AACG for offloading and movement schedules. b. Briefs unit leaders on offloading and movement schedules. c. Provides AACG, supporting installation officials, and higher HQ staff personnel representative a copy of DEL. d. Coordinates with AACG on the temporary storage of sensitive and classified equipment. e. Briefs commander on APOD activities. <p>*3. Unit leaders supervise APOD activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspect personnel and weapons for accountability as they exit aircraft. b. Brief personnel on APOD requirements based on commander's instructions. c. Monitor USDA and customs inspections to ensure personnel comply with USDA and customs officials' instructions. d. Designate personnel to assist in offloading aircraft, as required. e. Inspect personnel and personal gear at the holding area and MA to ensure all personnel have arrived with required personal gear. f. Brief commander on APOD activities. <p>4. Unit performs APOD activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disembarks aircraft IAW loadmaster's instructions. b. Assembles in APOD holding area, as directed. c. Performs offloading activities IAW AACG officials and loadmaster's instructions. d. Moves to APOD MA IAW commander's instructions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Inspects vehicles and equipment to ensure all equipment is offloaded and serviceable.</p> <p>f. Notifies unit leaders of vehicle and/or equipment deficiencies that cannot be corrected.</p> <p>g. Reconfigures, if necessary, vehicles and cargo for road movement.</p> <p>h. Prepares, if necessary, convoy for movement to home station or demobilization station.</p> <p>NOTE: See task steps two through five of Task 63-2-4808 for detailed convoy preparation procedures.</p> <p>i. Loads baggage, as directed, on transportation for movement to home station.</p> <p>j. Boards transportation, as directed, for movement to home station.</p> <p>k. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>l. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Directs personnel to inventory, clean and inspect vehicles, equipment, weapons, sensitive items, and personal gear, as it is redeployed to home station.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with S4 for procedures to turn in float and replacement equipment using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with battalion commander and staff for guidance on reception activities using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Approves after action reports.</p> <p>i. Briefs unit on reception activities.</p> <p>j. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>k. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>2. UMO performs home station activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with ITO for transportation support.</p> <p>b. Briefs Equipment Reception Team Leader on SPOD requirements.</p> <p>c. Verifies that all DEL listed vehicles and equipment have been redeployed, by conducting physical inventory.</p> <p>d. Notifies commander of discrepancies in DEL, if necessary.</p> <p>e. Updates AUEL, as required.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ performs home station personnel and administrative actions.</p> <p>a. Debriefs personnel IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>b. Coordinates reception activities IAW commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Consolidates unit after action reports.</p> <p>d. Prepares after action reports IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan and commander's instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Submits AAR to commander for approval.</p> <p>f. Distributes after action reports IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan and commander's instructions.</p> <p>g. Maintains after action reports and records IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan and commander's instructions.</p> <p>h. Identifies pending personnel actions of redeploying soldiers to determine if any unit and/or soldier actions (such as ratings, awards, financial actions, UCMJ actions, LOD investigations, physicals, and so on) are needed.</p> <p>4. Unit HQ performs home station supply activities.</p> <p>a. Turns in float and replacement equipment IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>b. Inspects weapons, basic loads, and CTA items for accountability and serviceability.</p> <p>c. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>d. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders supervise home station activities.</p> <p>a. Inspect vehicles, equipment, weapons, and personal gear for accountability compliance with the Redeployment Movement Plan, Maintenance SOP, and commander's instructions.</p> <p>b. Direct personnel, as required, to correct deficiencies in vehicles, equipment, weapons, and personal gear.</p> <p>c. Submit AAR to unit HQ IAW commander's instructions.</p> <p>d. Enforce safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>e. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>6. Equipment Reception Team Leader performs home station equipment reception activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Coordinates with UMO or ITO for transportation support to SPOD.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Briefs Equipment Reception Team on equipment reception schedule and requirements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Supervises movement to SPOD IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>7. Unit performs home station activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Completes redeployment personnel and administrative requirements based on the Redeployment Movement Plan and commander's instructions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Inventories, cleans and inspects vehicles, equipment, weapons, and personal gear, IAW the Redeployment Movement Plan, Maintenance SOP and commander's instructions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Employs safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Conducts acceptance inspection with PSA officials.</p> <p>e. Notifies higher HQ staff element OIC and S4 representative of missing or damaged equipment using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Assumes custody of equipment and cargo IAW higher HQ staff personnel representatives and PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with S2/S3 to verify arrangements for movement to home station using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Verifies arrival of morale and welfare supercargoes personnel.</p> <p>i. Reestablishes accountability and responsibility for supercargoes.</p> <p>j. Directs Equipment Reception Team to proceed to convoy marshaling area, IAW S2/S3's instructions.</p> <p>k. Monitors preparation of equipment for road convoy or rail movement to ensure compliance with TSOP.</p> <p>l. Briefs Equipment Reception Team leaders on SPOD requirements.</p> <p>m. Briefs unit commander and higher HQ staff element OIC on SPOD activities, as required.</p> <p>n. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>o. Enforces environmental protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises unit activities at SPOD.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with S4 representative to identify offloading schedules, location of holding and MAs, and other SPOD information, using analog and/or digital communications, as required.</p> <p>b. Briefs personnel on offloading schedules, location of MAs and USDA, customs, and other special SPOD requirements.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S4 representative and/or PSA officials to identify loading plans, schedules, and sites for rail movement using analog and/or digital communications, if required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Provides rail loading plans to Rail Loading Team Chief, if required.</p> <p>e. Monitors rail loading procedures to ensure compliance with PSA officials' instructions, if required.</p> <p>f. Monitors preparation of equipment for road convoy to ensure compliance with Movement Plan.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with S2/S3 representatives for convoy routes, maps, and timetable for road move to home station using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with S4 representatives for fuel and supplies for road move to home station using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Briefs Equipment Reception Team on convoy requirements.</p> <p>j. Briefs commander on SPOD activities.</p> <p>k. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>l. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Supercargoes representative performs SPOD activities.</p> <p>a. Disembarks ship IAW vessel POC's instructions.</p> <p>b. Reports to customs inspection site IAW vessel POC's instructions.</p> <p>c. Reports to Equipment Reception Team OIC upon completion of customs inspection.</p> <p>4. Equipment Reception Team performs equipment reception activities.</p> <p>a. Offloads vehicles and equipment IAW PSA officials' instructions.</p> <p>b. Inspects equipment to ensure all equipment is offloaded and operational.</p> <p>c. Notifies UMO of deficiencies that cannot be corrected.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Moves vehicles to USDA and customs inspection site(s) IAW UMO's instructions.</p> <p>e. Moves vehicles to rail loading site, if required.</p> <p>f. Performs rail loading activities, if required.</p> <p>NOTE: See task steps 10 and 11 of Task 63-2-4818 for detailed rail loading procedures.</p> <p>g. Moves vehicles and cargo to SPOD rail or convoy MA.</p> <p>h. Reconfigures vehicles and cargo for road movement, as appropriate.</p> <p>i. Fuels vehicles for convoy to home station, if appropriate.</p> <p>j. Prepares convoy for movement to home station, if necessary.</p> <p>NOTE: See task steps two through five of Task 63-2-4807 for detailed convoy preparation procedures.</p> <p>k. Notifies commander when Equipment Reception Team is prepared to move.</p> <p>l. Employs safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>m. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Verifies unit personnel have been fully briefed on entitlements.</p> <p>g. Verifies unit has completed reverse SRP process or verified arrangements for holdover personnel.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with higher HQ staff elements and rear detachment, if applicable, on status of welcome home activities at home station.</p> <p>i. Verifies unit convoy is prepared to cross SP, if applicable.</p> <p>j. Briefs the higher HQ commander or designated representative on status of demobilization station activities.</p> <p>k. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. UMO supervises demobilization station movement activities.</p> <p>a. Prepares and/or updates movement plans for all modes of transportation.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with S4 and/or AACG officials for transportation, maintenance, logistics, and other support, as required.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative, PMCT, or AACG to verify movement schedules, procedures, and requirements.</p> <p>d. Supervises off-loading and staging of unit vehicles IAW AACG guidance, if applicable.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S2/S3 representative for convoy clearance.</p> <p>f. Supervises preparation of convey for movement to home station, if necessary.</p> <p>g. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications.</p> <p>NOTE: See task steps two through five of Task 63-2-4808 for detailed convoy preparation procedures.</p> <p>h. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Unit HQ supervises demobilization station activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes accountability of personnel, weapons, and equipment. b. Verifies life support and logistical support for unit personnel with demobilization station staff elements. c. Directs unit to secure weapons, sensitive items, and classified documents in their respective secure storage site(s). d. Directs unit to report to designated location for reverse SRP briefing. e. Monitors reverse SRP for unit personnel to resolve problems if they occur. f. Verifies unit personnel have completed all reverse SRP stations, as necessary. g. Verifies transportation arrangements for all unit personnel. h. Enforces safety procedures IAW SOP and publications. i. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>4. Unit performs demobilization station activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assembles in designated location for reverse SRP briefings. b. Performs reverse SRP activities, as directed. c. Prepares for departure via convoy and/or government transportation to home station. d. Prepares convoy for movement to home station, if necessary. <p>NOTE: See steps two through five of Task 63-2-4808 for detailed convoy preparation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Loads baggage on transportation for movement to home station, as directed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Boards transportation for movement to home station, as directed. g. Employs safety procedures IAW SOP and publications. h. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit HQ completes integration actions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Enters tactical communications net.</p> <p>NOTE: Unit HQ will enter analog and/or digital communications nets, if so equipped.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Integrates unit into TAA security plan.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Clarifies operational mission parameters with S2/S3.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Submits required reports to gaining command.</p> <p>NOTE: Unit HQ will submit reports using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Conducts training as directed by gaining command.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">f. Coordinates support requirements with gaining command.</p> <p>NOTE: Unit HQ will submit reports using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">g. Establishes direct support relationships with various support elements in the support structure to include supply, services, maintenance, and medical.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">h. Assumes missions as directed by gaining command.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Directs movement planning.</p> <p>h. Prepares unit for mission.</p> <p>i. Receives daily situational briefings from higher HQ or TSB command and control element.</p> <p>j. Briefs higher HQ or TSB command and control element on status of unit.</p> <p>k. Notifies TSB when readiness is achieved.</p> <p>l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>2. Unit performs marshalling activities.</p> <p>a. Establishes command post.</p> <p>b. Verifies accountability of personnel and equipment.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with TSB command and control element for life support.</p> <p>d. Provides information concerning staging area activities based on TSB SOP to element leaders.</p> <p>e. Conducts risk assessment for onward movement.</p> <p>f. Establishes communications with TSB command and control element and higher-level commands.</p> <p>g. Establishes training objectives to be completed in the staging area.</p> <p>h. Verifies routes of march and support arrangements.</p> <p>i. Reports incremental buildup of combat power IAW TSB SOP.</p> <p>j. Conducts daily meetings with TSB command and control element.</p> <p>k. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. Unit performs premovement activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stages equipment in correct configuration for onward movement. b. Plans onward movement to the TAA or location designated by the gaining command. c. Coordinates with PMCT or MCT for onward movement. d. Prepares vehicles and equipment for movement. e. Verifies equipment is properly loaded on vehicles. f. Identifies convoy support centers on route of march. g. Prepares movement order. h. Briefs convoy personnel. i. Verifies SP time is established. j. Monitors environmental protection program procedures. <p>4. Unit conducts logistics activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies life support needs are met for unit personnel. b. Performs maintenance activities to ensure all equipment is serviceable and operational, to include refueling and maintenance checks and services. c. Uploads equipment and supplies onto vehicles. d. Inventories all property. e. Identifies all shortages. f. Signs hand receipts, as needed. g. Maintains personnel accountability. h. Draws basic loads (classes I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VIII, and IX) and maps, as needed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Initiates security measures as directed. j. Performs force protection. k. Conducts training, as needed. l. Conducts test driving, bore sighting, range activities, as directed. m. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Commander and leaders supervise air watch activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct manning of the OP that provides an early warning of approaching aircraft. b. Establish a listening watch on the air defense early warning radio net, if equipment is available. c. Depict on the map board current threat aircraft sightings in the immediate area. d. Forward all aircraft sightings with direction of flight to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications, if time and situation permit. <p>3. Unit personnel react to aircraft sightings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sound prescribed alarm to alert all unit personnel of the presence of threat aircraft. b. Occupy predesignated fighting positions and field fortifications. c. Maintain constant surveillance of assigned search sector. d. Identify threat aircraft visually. e. Remain concealed and hold fire to avoid revealing position. f. Restrict movement of vehicles or movement of personnel in open areas. <p>*4. Commander and leaders supervise post-attack activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sound "All Clear" signal as directed by unit HQ. b. Forward damage report and personnel status report to higher HQ staff elements using analog and/or digital communications. c. Submit PIR to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. d. Coordinate casualty treatment and evacuation with higher HQ S1 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. e. Submit casualty forms to the S1 within 24 hours. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Direct clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment.</p> <p>g. Coordinate changes or delays to support plan caused by air attack with higher HQ S2/S3 and support operations Section using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>h. Coordinate replacement of personnel with higher headquarters S1 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>i. Coordinate replacement of equipment with higher HQ S4 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>NOTE: Use ULLS-G to make requisitions for repair parts. ULLS-S4 is used to request equipment replacements.</p> <p>j. Direct unit to continue assigned mission.</p> <p>5. Unit personnel perform post-attack activities.</p> <p>a. Treat casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4517 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>b. Transport casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detail casualty transportation procedures.</p> <p>c. Reconstruct damaged fighting positions and field fortifications.</p> <p>d. Repair damaged camouflage material.</p> <p>e. Move KIA remains and personal effects to a predesignated location.</p> <p>f. Report casualties to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>g. Clear debris from area essential to mission accomplishment.</p> <p>h. Continue mission as directed by the commander.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (63-OPFOR-1007)

CONDITION: OPFOR HQ requires intelligence on the location and identification of enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and conduct a visual inspection of enemy rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Photograph assigned sectors. 2. Make quick visual checks where cloud ceiling is low. 3. Locate enemy positions in the rear area, particularly support and storage bases, and C2 facilities. 4. Report PIR and other information requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit engages hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Places weapon on highest rate of fire. b. Selects proper aim point for type of aircraft and direction of flight. c. Engages hostile aircraft with all available small arms until destroyed or warded off. <p>*3. Commander and leaders supervise post attack activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Give "All Clear" signal when hostile aircraft have departed the area. b. Forward damage report and personnel status report to S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications. c. Submit personnel SITREP to S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications, including casualty forms within 24 hours. d. Coordinate casualty treatment and evacuation with S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications. e. Direct clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment. f. Coordinate changes or delays to support plan caused by air attack with support operations section, battalion support operations section and supported maneuver battalion S4 Section using analog and/or digital communications. g. Coordinate replacement of personnel with the S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications. h. Coordinate replacement of equipment with S4 Section using ULLS-G to request repair parts and ULLS-S4 to request equipment replacements. i. Direct unit to continue assigned mission. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Unit personnel perform post-attack activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Treat casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Report casualties to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Transport casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed transportation procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Reconstruct damaged fighting positions and field fortifications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (63-OPFOR-1006)

CONDITION: OPFOR elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of enemy support sites and/or the locations of road march elements to OPFOR HQ. OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: 1. Locate command and control site(s) or convoys. 2. Conduct attack runs on designated target(s). 3. Destroy enemy equipment, supplies, vehicles, and personnel.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>(c) Take over as gunners if gunners are killed or wounded. (Ammunition bearers assist assistant gunners in rendering first aid and in getting wounded or dead gunners off the gun.)</p> <p>(d) Move to damage control or fire stations as ordered.</p> <p>(5) Gunners keep up a steady volume of fire until the target is destroyed or moves out of the sector of fire, or when a cease fire signal (a continuous blast for one minute on the gun station horns) is given. Gunners and assistant gunners continue to fire with small arms if machine gun becomes nonoperational beyond immediate action.</p> <p>(6) Gunners and assistant gunners reload as necessary. Assistant gunners bring ammunition from ready service locker or from ammunition bearers. Reload small arms as used and refill ammunition pouches.</p> <p>(7) After cease fire, gunners and assistant gunners remain at ready until ordered to stand down. Ammunition bearers render first aid as required to wounded crew.</p> <p>(8) Gunners and assistant gunners clear, clean, and maintain .50 machine guns as required. Assistant gunners and ammunition bearers restock ready service lockers with machine gun ammunition. Clear and clean individual weapons used in the action. Refill small arms ammunition pouches.</p> <p>b. Conduct damage control operations.</p> <p>c. Provide initial incident report to the higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>*2. Convoy commander requests close air support.</p> <p>a. Verifies threat position(s).</p> <p>b. Requests CAS by means prescribed in movement order.</p> <p>c. Supervises preparation of convoy personnel for friendly strike.</p> <p>d. Marks unit location(s) with prescribed colored smoke.</p> <p>e. Communicates strike effectiveness with the higher HQ staff element.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. Unit reorganizes after the attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains 360 degree surveillance. b. Treats casualties. c. Requests MEDEVAC support. d. Reestablishes chain of command, if necessary. e. Performs Mortuary Affairs functions. f. Evacuates casualties. g. Assesses damage to vessel and cargo. h. Removes critical items from unrecoverable vessels. i. Requests emergency destruction of vessels and cargo. j. Forwards the SITREP to the higher HQ staff element. k. Reorganizes convoy. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-022-0003	Operate a Caliber .50 Machine Gun	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-732-1601	Make an Initial Marine Casualty Report	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. March commander relays NBC information to convoy elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plots contamination area on map overlay(s). b. Notifies all march elements of reported location and type of contamination using analog and/or digital communications. c. Designates assembly area(s) for convoy elements to complete preparations to cross area. d. Directs required protective measures and MOPP level for assembly area(s). e. Reports locations of assembly area(s), halt time, and tentative resumption time to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. f. Forwards NBC 4 nuclear reports to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. g. Directs recording of dose rates IAW time intervals established in the TSOP. <p>3. March elements occupy assembly area(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Move into assembly area without stopping on the route of march. b. Establish perimeter security with 360-degree surveillance and crew-served weapons positioned along likely avenues of approach. c. Employ camouflage and concealment techniques with emphasis on overhead concealment, mirrors, and windshields. d. Perform during-operations PMCS IAW applicable TM. <p>4. Designated personnel perform monitoring activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Record dose rates IAW time intervals specified in the TSOP. <p>NOTE: During actual fallout, dose rates must be recorded at a minimum of every 15 minutes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Establish correlation factor. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Record correlation factor.</p> <p>d. Report correlation factor figures to the unit defense team.</p> <p>e. Record dose rate at 30-minute intervals after peak dose rate has been reported.</p> <p>*5. March commander organizes radiological reconnaissance team(s).</p> <p>a. Identifies possible routes through contaminated area by map reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Tasks convoy elements for vehicles, personnel, and equipment.</p> <p>c. Prepares overlays and/or strip maps to guide reconnaissance team(s) on assigned routes.</p> <p>d. Briefs reconnaissance team(s) on route, mission, and reporting procedures.</p> <p>*6. March commander selects a crossing route.</p> <p>a. Employs correlation factor to determine ground dose rates from reconnaissance survey reports.</p> <p>b. Identifies contamination levels for tentative routes from NBC 5 report and/or radiological survey reports.</p> <p>c. Forwards radiological survey data to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Establishes new exposure limits from OEG based on survey reports and in coordination with the higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>e. Selects best route that reduces exposure and permits the fastest travel based on METT-TC.</p> <p>f. Requests route clearance and approval from higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*7. March commander supervises crossing preparation activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Assigns crossing time(s) for all convoy elements. c. Assigns assembly area location(s) for all convoy elements on the other side of the contaminated area for hasty decontamination. d. Directs placement of extra shielding consistent with available materials. e. Directs precautionary measures and MOPP level required for crossing. f. Coordinates Call For Support with higher HQ staff element for hasty and deliberate decontamination support using analog and/or digital communications. <p>8. NBC reconnaissance team(s) conducts a radiological route survey.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employ MOPP level 4. b. Employ additional shielding for non-armored vehicles. c. Inspect serviceability of all radiacmeters and other reconnaissance equipment. d. Plot checkpoints and distance intervals along route on overlays, based on tactical situation and time available. e. Employ radiacmeters and dosimeters to measure dose-rate readings inside the vehicle(s) at selected intervals between the checkpoints along the route. f. Employ radiacmeters to measure dose-rate readings outside the vehicle(s) to determine the correlation factor. g. Report survey data to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications or radio. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Place entrance markers at boundary of contaminated area.</p> <p>NOTE: Markers should face away from the contaminated area in order to facilitate identification by convoy lead vehicle.</p> <p>i. Report location of contaminated areas to convoy commander via NBC 4 nuclear report format.</p> <p>j. Report reading, time, and location of contamination detection to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>k. Terminate radiological survey activities when turnback dose or turnback dose rate is reached, or when the specified area has been reconnoitered.</p> <p>9. Unit prepares to cross contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Employs MOPP level 4.</p> <p>b. Employs equipment and cargo protection measures.</p> <p>c. Closes all air vents and windows on vehicles.</p> <p>d. Employs extra shielding for non-armored vehicles.</p> <p>10. Unit crosses contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Follows route as marked by reconnaissance party or by overlay.</p> <p>b. Employs precautions that reduce dust.</p> <p>c. Avoids low ground, overhead branches, and heavy brush.</p> <p>d. Moves as quickly as possible across contaminated area without unnecessary halts and delays.</p> <p>e. Verifies that all vehicles have crossed the contaminated area and are out of the affected area before stopping.</p> <p>f. Forwards crossing report to march commander using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*11. March commander supervises crossing of contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes extended interval or staggered parallel routes to minimize radioactive dust pickup. b. Monitors convoy elements crossings to ensure compliance with TSOP. c. Maintains communications with all march elements during crossing using analog and/or digital communications. d. Directs dropping of all expendable covering materials at the edge of the contaminated area. e. Forwards crossing report to the higher HQ staff element when all convoy elements have crossed the contaminated area using analog and/or digital communications. <p>*12. March commander supervises decontamination measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies level of decontamination required in coordination with higher HQ staff element. b. Directs implementation of basic soldier skill decontamination based on level of contamination, weather, and tactical situation. c. Directs implementation of hasty decontamination based on level of contamination, weather, and the tactical situation. d. Enforces OPSEC measures during decontamination operations. e. Records radiation level readings from selected personnel wearing dosimeters. f. Forwards radiation exposure status to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. g. Coordinates Call For Support for detailed decontamination support with higher HQ staff using analog and/or digital communications. h. Monitors personnel for symptoms of radiation sickness. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>13. Unit performs radiological decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Locates radiological contamination using unit radiacmeter. b. Performs personal wipedown technique on individual equipment within 15 minutes of contamination by brushing, scraping, or shaking dry contaminant from equipment, if possible. c. Washes exposed area of skin with soap and water. d. Wipes off mask, hood, helmet, gloves, footwear covers, and other personal equipment with soapy water. e. Disposes of contaminated dust and articles IAW prescribed techniques in higher HQ OPORD and the battalion and unit TSOP. f. Measures level of residual radiation using radiacmeters to determine if contamination is negligible. g. Assists in hasty decontamination of equipment (vehicle washdown). h. Conducts deliberate decontamination. i. Constructs sumps and runoff ditches to control contaminated drainage. <p>*14. March commander coordinates resumption of road march.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates SP location and times for all convoy elements. b. Reschedules checkpoint and RP crossing times in coordination with higher HQ staff element. c. Provides new march instructions to all convoy elements. d. Directs covering and marking of contaminated runoff areas. e. Affixes locations of contaminated runoff areas on map overlay(s). f. Forwards march resumption reports to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
15. Unit performs march resumption activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Covers areas used for decontamination. b. Marks entrance and exit to contaminated area. c. Records radiation dose readings of areas used for decontamination operations. d. Crosses new SP at time prescribed by the convoy commander. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NON-PERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (63-OPFOR-1001)

CONDITION: OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Deliver chemical agents in low lying and/or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting C2 system. 3. Restrict enemy units movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict casualties on enemy forces.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit takes action against sniper fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness using analog and/or digital communications. b. Reports sniper fire to convoy commander immediately upon contact. c. Returns fire immediately that kills snipers or suppresses their fire (designated personnel only). d. Increases column rate of march and vehicle interval. <p>*3. Convoy commander supervises defense against ambush, road blocked, or road not blocked.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies location of ambush site on map with map overlay using analog and/or digital communications. b. Directs convoy elements under attack to employ correct protective actions as prescribed in higher HQ movement order and TSOP. c. Provides instructions on halt points and security requirements to all convoy elements. d. Forwards initial incident report to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. e. Directs hardened vehicles with automatic fire capability into position to lay down concentrated fire on threat position(s). f. Directs the convoy elements ahead and convoy element following to organize security teams to attack flanks of threat ambush party. g. Maintains constant communications with all convoy elements engaging threat to immediately make adjustments to tactical situation using analog and/or digital communications. h. Forwards subsequent SITREP reports to higher HQ staff element as situation changes using analog and/or digital communications. i. Requests immediate CAS and/or indirect fire support from higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>j. Directs use of pyrotechnics for signaling or marking areas.</p> <p>k. Develops contingency plans to displace elements not under attack and withdraw elements under attack.</p> <p>4. Unit defends against ground ambush (road not blocked).</p> <p>a. Reports ambush to convoy commander immediately upon contact using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Identifies threat location(s).</p> <p>c. Returns fire immediately that kills threat and suppresses their fire (non-driving personnel).</p> <p>d. Stops vehicles (not in kill zone).</p> <p>e. Increases rate of march until out of kill zone (vehicles in kill zone).</p> <p>f. Keeps roadway clear by pushing disabled vehicles aside.</p> <p>g. Organizes security element(s) of soldiers not in kill zone (senior member present).</p> <p>h. Directs fire and maneuver of security elements to allow remaining vehicles to pass through kill zone (senior member present).</p> <p>i. Forwards SITREP to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>5. Unit defends against ground attack (road blocked).</p> <p>a. Reports ambush to convoy commander immediately upon contact.</p> <p>b. Dismounts vehicles on opposite side of direction of ambush.</p> <p>c. Returns fire immediately which kills threat or suppresses their fire (soldiers in kill zone).</p> <p>d. Takes up firing positions while awaiting orders (soldiers not in kill zone).</p> <p>e. Organizes security element(s) of soldiers not in kill zone (senior member present).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Directs fire and maneuver of security elements to allow removal of roadblock (senior member present).</p> <p>g. Forwards SITREP to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*6. Convoy commander requests indirect fire support.</p> <p>a. Requests fire support IAW instructions in the higher HQ movement order or TSOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Identifies grid direction to threat location.</p> <p>c. Identifies threat target location using grid coordinates or shift from a known point.</p> <p>d. Transmits call for fire in proper sequence using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>e. Transmits fire adjustment information in proper sequence to the fire support element, if an "adjust fire" mission is required, using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Transmits "end of mission" and surveillance report, if fire was sufficient, using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*7. Convoy commander requests CAS.</p> <p>a. Verifies threat position(s).</p> <p>b. Requests CAS by means prescribed in higher HQ movement order using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Supervises preparation of unit personnel for friendly strike.</p> <p>d. Directs marking of friendly unit location(s) with prescribed colored smoke.</p> <p>e. Communicates strike effectiveness to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>8. Unit employs passive defense measures against air attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides the prescribed signal to alert column. b. Staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Drives vehicle in shadows or wood line. d. Assumes firing positions. e. Fires only upon command. f. Reports all aircraft actions to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. <p>9. Unit employs active defense measures against air attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employs the prescribed signal to alert march elements. b. Identifies threat aircraft visually. c. Disperses vehicles to concealed locations. d. Assumes firing positions. e. Prepares crew-served weapons for firing. f. Fires weapons at attacking aircraft only if fired upon or on command. <p>*10. Convoy commander supervises reorganization after attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies status of all personnel, equipment, and cargo through convoy element reports using analog and/or digital communications. b. Coordinates requirements within march elements for load transfer, vehicle repairs, mortuary affairs, and medical evacuation using analog and/or digital communications. c. Requests emergency destruction authorization from higher HQ staff element for unrepairable items using analog and/or digital communications. d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>11. Unit reorganizes after the attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains 360-degree surveillance. b. Treats casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Reports casualties using analog and/or digital communications. d. Requests air ambulance support through convoy commander. e. Reestablishes chain of command, if necessary. f. Secures landing zone, if air ambulance is required. g. Evacuates casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty evacuation procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Performs mortuary affairs functions. <p>NOTE: See Task 10-2-4513 for detailed mortuary affairs procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Assesses damage to vehicles and cargo to determine operability and repairability. j. Performs BDAR for recoverable vehicles. k. Removes critical items from unrecoverable vehicles. l. Requests emergency destruction of vehicles and non-medical equipment from march commander using analog and/or digital communications. m. Forwards SITREP to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications. n. Reorganizes convoy elements. o. Resumes march. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (63-OPFOR-1003)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

STANDARD: 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Report actions to superiors.

TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (63-OPFOR-1004)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is operating along an enemy MSR. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

STANDARD: 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of the OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture enemy personnel and destroy specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage enemy reinforcements and security elements. 7. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 8. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Supervise construction of OP/LP.</p> <p>j. Supervise emplacement of expedient warning device and position barriers.</p> <p>k. Assign personnel to unit internal reaction force IAW defense plan.</p> <p>l. Prepare defensive sector sketch showing the location and sector of fire for each weapon, all known dead space, and the location and estimated ranges to prominent terrain features within the assigned area.</p> <p>m. Forward sector sketch to unit leader using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>n. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>o. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel construct primary fighting positions.</p> <p>a. Identify position location and sector of fire as directed by unit leader.</p> <p>b. Dig an initial hasty fighting position at least one-half meter (18 to 20 inches) deep and with partially cleared fields of fire.</p> <p>c. Walk sector to determine ranges and dead space using buddy system.</p> <p>d. Improve hasty fighting position to a two-man position.</p> <p>e. Install sector of fire stakes to identify area directed by unit leader.</p> <p>f. Prepare appropriate range card by sighting in automatic weapons, anti armor weapons, and grenade launchers on the assigned engagement area.</p> <p>g. Dig position to fit the natural cover available at least armpit deep using dirt to build a parapet (front cover) at least 18 inches thick.</p> <p>h. Dig two trench grenade sumps, one at each end of the two-man position, and sloped toward the sumps.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Complete clearing fields of fire, using foliage for camouflage.</p> <p>j. Construct overhead and flank cover for fighting position as time permits.</p> <p>k. Camouflage position to prevent easy detection from 35 meters.</p> <p>l. Report completion of primary positions to the unit leader.</p> <p>m. Mark alternate and supplementary positions as directed by unit leader.</p> <p>n. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>o. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel emplace obstacles and early warning devices.</p> <p>a. Place PEWS into operation at location(s) directed by the element leader.</p> <p>b. Emplace man-made barriers, concertina wire, and field expedient devices in locations directed by the unit leader.</p> <p>c. Position trip flares and field-expedient noise devices in locations directed by the unit leader.</p> <p>d. Camouflage all obstacles and devices.</p> <p>e. Report completion of barrier emplacements to the unit leader using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*4. Unit leaders supervise set up of defensive sector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidate element defense sketches, after verification of compliance, into a unit defensive sector sketch. b. Forward unit's defensive sector sketch to unit CP within one hour after arrival at the new site using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. c. Inspect unit positions to ensure structure, camouflage, and location comply with the unit defense plan and TSOP. d. Verify interlocking fires, dead space, and sector of fire for key weapon positions. e. Inspect OP/LP and personnel for communications, camouflage, and knowledge of withdrawal route. f. Inspect obstacles to ensure compliance with unit defense plan and TSOP. g. Report completion of sector set up to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. h. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. i. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>5. Unit personnel establish OP/LP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position OP/LP within effective small arms range of unit elements. b. Establish communications (analog and/or digital means) with nearest unit element and the CP. c. Camouflage OP/LP to prevent it from being detected within 35 meters. d. Establish withdrawal route that provides adequate cover and concealment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*6. Commander supervises set up of the unit's defensive sector.</p> <p>a. Inspects defensive preparation to ensure compliance with the defense plan.</p> <p>b. Consolidates element sector defense sketches, after verification of compliance, into the unit sector sketch.</p> <p>c. Forwards unit sector sketch to the battalion S2/S3 element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>d. Maintains sector sketch in the CP using digital device and/or analog displays.</p> <p>e. Directs establishment of centrally located ammunition resupply and casualty collection point in the unit area.</p> <p>f. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Identify the availability of personnel to perform tasks.</p> <p>h. Designate MOPP level as prescribed by the higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>i. Establish decontamination priorities for operational sites in coordination with the higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>j. List tasks to be performed and time limits for each task.</p> <p>k. Disseminate NBC defense preparation plan to all subelements using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>l. Task elements to provide NBC equipment operators.</p> <p>m. Conduct MOPP analysis.</p> <p>n. Provide guidance for the protection of food, water, and mission essential supplies.</p> <p>*2. Element leaders implement NBC defense plan and preparatory tasks.</p> <p>a. Conduct inventory of all element NBC defense equipment.</p> <p>b. Request issue of shortages from the unit supply facility.</p> <p>c. Direct placement of automatic alarm system(s) located in element areas.</p> <p>d. Direct improvement of individual fighting positions with consideration for blast, thermal, and nuclear radiation, electromagnetic pulse, transient radiation effects on electronics, and blackout.</p> <p>e. Supervise construction of protective shelters in assigned area.</p> <p>f. Assign each element member to a protective shelter.</p> <p>g. Forward roster of all element NBC defense equipment operators to the CP using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>h. Provide instructions on audio and visual NBC alarms, MOPP level, and protective shelters.</p> <p>i. Inspect all NBC defense equipment for proper fit, serviceability, and accountability.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>j. Enforce field sanitation and personal hygiene measures.</p> <p>k. Inspect all element personnel for compliance with measures prescribed by the battalion and unit TSOP, OPORD, and commander's directives.</p> <p>l. Forward element completion report to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>m. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.</p> <p>n. Enforces environmental protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel perform NBC defense preparatory tasks.</p> <p>a. Construct protective shelters at locations designated by element leaders.</p> <p>b. Improve fighting positions with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</p> <p>c. Perform PMCS on all survey equipment, monitoring equipment, and chemical detection equipment.</p> <p>d. Zero all dosimeters using appropriate charger.</p> <p>e. Inspect protective masks and clothing for serviceability and accountability.</p> <p>f. Identify assigned protective shelters or defensive positions in case of an attack.</p> <p>g. Carry protective mask with hood, skin decontamination kit, and detector paper (as permitted by designated MOPP level).</p> <p>h. Store overgarments, overboots, and gloves within reach while at workstation (as permitted by designated MOPP level).</p> <p>i. Employ field sanitation and personal hygiene measures.</p> <p>j. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>k. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Monitor employment of automated systems security and defense against DE devices preventive measures to ensure compliance with TSOP and command guidance.</p> <p>g. Perform "on-the-spot correction" when OPSEC weaknesses or violations are discovered.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel employ information security measures.</p> <p>a. Account for all OPORDs and annexes by requiring receipt signature during distribution.</p> <p>NOTE: OPORDs should be sent by secure analog and/or digital means when possible to reduce the number of written copies.</p> <p>b. Account for all SOIs/SSIs at all times.</p> <p>c. Control all operational information on a need-to-know basis.</p> <p>d. Maintain all classified information and materials in an authorized security container.</p> <p>e. Maintain emergency destruction instructions IAW applicable regulations and the TSOP.</p> <p>f. Maintain details of military activities separate from personnel activities.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel employ SIGSEC measures.</p> <p>a. Transmit mission essential information by secure radio or secure digital means only.</p> <p>NOTE: If situation permits, information should be transmitted by secure analog and/or digital device to minimize detection and voice transmissions.</p> <p>b. Employ authentication and encryption codes specified in the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>c. Employ code names for persons, equipment, units, and locations when transmitting over nonsecure means IAW SOI/SSI.</p> <p>d. Transmit messages for no longer than 20 seconds.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Report all COMSEC discrepancies/violations to higher HQ communications personnel.</p> <p>NOTE: Encryption may not be necessary with SINCGARS radios and digital communication.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel employ electronic protection.</p> <p>a. Tune equipment to assigned frequencies specified in current SOI/SSI.</p> <p>b. Observe, as directed, all radio silence periods.</p> <p>c. Employ correct anti-jamming procedures.</p> <p>d. Forward MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to battalion communications personnel within 10 minutes of the incident using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>5. Unit personnel employ counter-surveillance measures.</p> <p>a. Employ litter prevention measures that keep area free of trash, litter, or personal items.</p> <p>b. Employ measures that prevent creating footpaths and vehicle tracks between elements in the unit area.</p> <p>c. Set radio volumes and squelches to lowest possible setting.</p> <p>6. Unit personnel employ automated systems security.</p> <p>a. Position computers within an enclosure that provides controlled access.</p> <p>b. Secure all electrical facilities that support the system.</p> <p>c. Restrict access to the computer by use of classified passwords.</p> <p>d. Control all log-ons and file access by the use of unique operator passwords.</p> <p>e. Destroy all printouts of reports and lists as new ones are printed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. Unit personnel employ defense against DE devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position unit equipment and vehicles in covered or concealed locations. b. Cover glass or mirrors within line-of-sight of known threat locations. c. Wear laser safety goggles when laser devices are used in the immediate area. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE (63-OPFOR-1007)

CONDITION: OPFOR HQ requires intelligence on the location and identification of enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and conduct a visual inspection of enemy rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Photograph assigned sectors. 2. Make quick visual checks where cloud ceiling is low. 3. Locate enemy positions in the rear area, particularly support and storage bases, and C2 facilities. 4. Report PIR and other information requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE (63-OPFOR-1012)

CONDITION: OPFOR employs a large number of radio detection finding sets, along with ground and airborne communications analysts, to monitor enemy forces for loose communications security practices.

STANDARD: 1. Locate the positions of enemy command, intelligence, and logistics radio nets. 2. Forward locations to OPFOR HQ. 3. Use jamming signals against enemy radio receivers. 4. Monitor enemy radio nets for intelligence information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Don fresh overgarments, overshoes, and gloves by using the buddy system.		
d. Secure hood using the buddy system.		
e. Secure individual load-bearing equipment.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Closes all windows and flaps on vehicles.</p> <p>d. Removes all items from inside vehicle that cannot be decontaminated by using DS2.</p> <p>e. Moves vehicles and equipment to the decontamination site.</p> <p>3. Unit processes vehicles and equipment through the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Processes vehicles and equipment IAW directions of the decontamination element during decon operations.</p> <p>b. Moves vehicles to unit motor pool area after decontamination is completed.</p> <p>c. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>d. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit clears the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Provides assistance to decontamination element, as required.</p> <p>b. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>c. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>d. Forwards completion report to higher HQ staff element using analog or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Commence continuous monitoring.</p> <p>i. Protect all food, water, and mission essential supplies from contamination.</p> <p>j. Continue to improve positions prior to the arrival of fallout.</p> <p>k. Request permission to move out of the expected hazard area, if mission permits, using analog and digital communications.</p> <p>l. Report radiation exposure status to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel reorganizes unit area.</p> <p>a. Inspects immediate area for casualties and damaged equipment.</p> <p>b. Forwards NBC 4 nuclear report to higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Performs ADC operations.</p> <p>d. Treats casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>e. Transports casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty transportation procedures.</p> <p>f. Reestablishes chain of command.</p> <p>g. Resumes operational mission within time established by the higher HQ.</p> <p>h. Forwards casualty reports to higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING TACTICAL NUCLEAR WEAPONS (63-OPFOR-1002)

CONDITION: Tactical nuclear weapons are employed against key locations in the rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Disrupt or delay movement of equipment and supplies to forward areas. 2. Destroy enemy equipment and supplies. 3. Inflict nuclear casualties among enemy troops. 4. Deny enemy use of specified areas. 5. Contaminate enemy equipment and supplies.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Decrease perimeter manning level as tactical situation permits.</p> <p>i. Direct reorganization until unit returns to normal operational level.</p> <p>j. Forward casualty and battle damage reports to appropriate staff elements using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>2. Unit responds to a Level I attack.</p> <p>a. Sounds prescribed attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Occupies fighting positions, as directed.</p> <p>c. Continues normal operational mission with weapons and protective mask within reach, as directed.</p> <p>d. Assembles at predesignated rally point (internal reaction force).</p> <p>e. Employs challenge and password to all personnel on CP defensive lines during night operations.</p> <p>f. Engages Level I threat with all available fire until threat is defeated and driven from the CP area.</p> <p>g. Identifies casualties and weapon systems/equipment damages.</p> <p>h. Forwards SITREP to unit CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>3. Unit responds to the effects of a Level I attack.</p> <p>a. Replaces key injured personnel.</p> <p>b. Replaces weapon systems that are destroyed during engagement.</p> <p>c. Relocates compromised fighting positions.</p> <p>d. Camouflages positions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Treats casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>f. Transports casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty transportation procedures.</p> <p>g. Performs ADC operations.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4028 for detailed ADC procedures.</p> <p>h. Inspects communication lines for breaks or tampering.</p> <p>i. Forwards personnel and equipment status report to unit CP using analog and digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>j. Assembles KIAs and personal effects at designated location.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 10-2-4513 for detailed MA procedures.</p> <p>k. Moves all EPW to a designated collection area.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4304 for details on EPW processing.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT RAID (63-OPFOR-1009)

CONDITION: OPFOR element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a CSS base.

STANDARD: 1. Surprise enemy forces. 2. Assault enemy support base and accomplish assigned tasks. 3. Destroy specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoid decisive engagement. 5. Withdraw all personnel from objective area(s) within time prescribed. 6. Obtain all PIR from raid site.

TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (63-OPFOR-1013)

CONDITION: OPFOR dispatches small teams into enemy rear area to disrupt CSS operations.

STANDARD: 1. Locate rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

TASK: ATTACK (63-OPFOR-1010)

CONDITION: Enemy rear area CSS base has been located by OPFOR element. PIR and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. OPFOR element has automatic and anti-armor weapons, and light mortars. OPFOR element is the size of approximately two platoons.

STANDARD: 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and identified weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy forces flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy all equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the CSS base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Direct preliminary loading of nonessential equipment and supplies.</p> <p>h. Direct positioning of vehicles for immediate exit.</p> <p>2. Unit performs pre-engagement activities.</p> <p>a. Occupies fighting positions (designated soldiers only).</p> <p>b. Employs MOPP2, as a minimum.</p> <p>c. Moves response force to predesignated positions within the nearest cluster.</p> <p>d. Moves supplies to predetermined positions within the nearest cluster.</p> <p>e. Loads all nonessential equipment and supplies.</p> <p>f. Positions vehicles for rapid dispersion.</p> <p>g. Maintains surveillance of assigned sector(s).</p> <p>h. Maintains NBC surveillance.</p> <p>i. Maintains strict light and noise discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: ATTACK (63-OPFOR-1010)

CONDITION: Enemy rear area CSS base has been located by OPFOR element. PIR and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. OPFOR element has automatic and anti-armor weapons, and light mortars. OPFOR element is the size of approximately two platoons.

STANDARD: 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and identified weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy forces flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy all equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the CSS base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit prepares for hasty displacement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Dismantles tentage, antennas, and other equipment as directed by the chain of command.</p> <p>NOTE: This performance measure is executed emphasizing speed rather than standard procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Loads equipment IAW commander's guidance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Positions vehicles for departure on notice.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Maintains local security while awaiting orders to move.</p> <p>3. Unit destroys non-medical supplies, equipment, and documents that have been designated for abandonment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Destroys documents IAW TSOP.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Destroys supplies IAW appropriate TM and TSOP.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Renders equipment inoperative IAW appropriate TM.</p> <p>4. Unit departs area.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Conducts orderly departure from area without excessive noises.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Moves elements to new assembly area via prescribed route.</p> <p>5. Rear security party provides security for unit displacement.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Occupies fighting positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Exits area as soon as last element has departed.</p> <p>NOTE: If threat elements are in the area and must be engaged, delete existing subparagraph "b" above and insert the following performance measures. b. Engages threat, when sighted, with all available weapons. c. Performs disengagement under fire to supplementary positions. d. Exits area by available means.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (63-OPFOR-1013)

CONDITION: OPFOR dispatches small teams into enemy rear area to disrupt CSS operations.

STANDARD: 1. Locate rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Maintain communications with the S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>h. Direct unit by fire and maneuver to repel and/or delay penetration of threat forces into the CP area.</p> <p>i. Maintain current situation map with all known friendly and threat locations using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel react to threat.</p> <p>a. Sound attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Occupy defensive positions.</p> <p>c. Forward SALUTE report to CP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Engage threat with organic weapons without compromising positions.</p> <p>e. Conduct tactical fire and maneuver to repel and/or delay penetration into CP defense.</p> <p>f. Forward SITREP to CP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Treat casualties with life-threatening wounds or injuries first.</p> <p>h. Replace injured key personnel.</p> <p>i. Replace weapons systems that are destroyed during the engagement.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel react to indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Sound alarm by shouting "incoming" and following TSOP and/or leader's commands.</p> <p>b. Seek overhead cover protection of fighting position.</p> <p>c. Don protective masks within 9 seconds (with hood, within 15 seconds).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Forward SHELLREP to unit CP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>e. Conduct standard unmasking procedures, if chemical detector kit or detector paper is not available.</p> <p>*4. Commander and leaders coordinate indirect fire support.</p> <p>a. Coordinate preplanned fires with the S2/S3 fire support element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Establish communications with fire support operations center using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Request fire support using proper procedures and terminology using analog and/or digital communications as time permits.</p> <p>d. Adjust fires on target, as necessary.</p> <p>e. Terminate fire mission using analog and/or digital communications as time permits.</p> <p>f. Report effects of fires to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*5. Commander and leaders direct CAS.</p> <p>a. Coordinate CAS mission through the S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Coordinate communications with CAS strike leader through the S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Prepare unit area for CAS strikes.</p> <p>d. Identify friendly positions by use of colored smoke.</p> <p>e. Identify targets to strike leader.</p> <p>f. Adjust air strikes on target(s).</p> <p>g. Terminate CAS mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Report strike effects to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications. i. Forward SITREP to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (63-OPFOR-1006)

CONDITION: OPFOR elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of enemy support sites and/or the locations of road march elements to OPFOR HQ. OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: 1. Locate command and control site(s) or convoys. 2. Conduct attack runs on designated target(s). 3. Destroy enemy equipment, supplies, vehicles, and personnel.

TASK: ATTACK (63-OPFOR-1010)

CONDITION: Enemy rear area CSS base has been located by OPFOR element. PIR and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. OPFOR element has automatic and anti-armor weapons, and light mortars. OPFOR element is the size of approximately two platoons.

STANDARD: 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and identified weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy forces flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy all equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the CSS base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Monitor execution of disengagement for compliance with commander's directives.</p> <p>g. Forward completion report to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>2. Unit performs fire and movement to rear.</p> <p>a. Coordinates for execution of fire and movement among elements (all elements).</p> <p>b. Employs smoke grenades that provide a screen to cover disengagement.</p> <p>c. Lays down a base of fire with all available weapons (second element).</p> <p>d. Moves from primary to supplementary fighting positions (first element).</p> <p>e. Lays down a base of fire with all available weapons (first element).</p> <p>f. Moves from primary to supplementary fighting positions (second element).</p> <p>g. Reestablishes sectors of fire within 10 minutes of move.</p> <p>h. Forwards completion report to the CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Prepare updated unit defense sketch.</p> <p>j. Forward sketch to the S2/S3 using digital/analog device or messenger.</p> <p>k. Forward personnel, weapons, and equipment status report to the S1 and S4 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>2. Unit performs defensive reorganization activities.</p> <p>a. Mans all critical weapon systems.</p> <p>b. Redistributes ammunition to all fighting positions.</p> <p>c. Reports ammunition status to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>d. Occupies newly assigned fighting positions.</p> <p>e. Establishes new sectors of fire.</p> <p>f. Performs PMCS on assigned weapons.</p> <p>g. Reconstructs fighting positions.</p> <p>h. Reconstructs obstacles and warning devices.</p> <p>i. Replaces damaged camouflage.</p> <p>j. Reports all threat activities to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>k. Treats casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4517 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>l. Transports casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty transportation procedures.</p> <p>m. Reports all casualties to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Exchange tactical information with TCF or MP element counterpart using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>h. Forward handover completion report to S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>2. Unit provides battle handover assistance.</p> <p>a. Establish contact points.</p> <p>b. Establish overwatch positions.</p> <p>c. Marks TCF or MP unit routes.</p> <p>d. Guides TCF or MP units along specified routes.</p> <p>e. Provide overwatch for TCF or MP.</p> <p>f. Forward handover completion report to CP using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: ATTACK (63-OPFOR-1010)

CONDITION: Enemy rear area CSS base has been located by OPFOR element. PIR and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. OPFOR element has automatic and anti-armor weapons, and light mortars. OPFOR element is the size of approximately two platoons.

STANDARD: 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and identified weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy forces flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy all equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the CSS base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Coordinate additional support requirements with Control and Assessment CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>g. Coordinate dispatch of ADC teams with Control and Assessment CP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*2. Commander and leaders organize unit ADC teams.</p> <p>a. Assemble required team members and equipment IAW the higher HQ OPORD and TSOP.</p> <p>b. Dispatch control and assessment team personnel and equipment to Control and Assessment CP.</p> <p>c. Organize decontamination squad(s) and light rescue squad(s) as prescribed by TSOP and higher HQ S4 guidance.</p> <p>d. Brief decontamination and rescue squads.</p> <p>e. Dispatch decontamination and rescue squads as directed by Control and Assessment CP.</p> <p>3. Unit performs restoration activities.</p> <p>a. Establishes barrier and/or checkpoints that deny access to danger areas such as those containing unexploded ordnance, POL fires, and damaged structures.</p> <p>b. Treats casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>c. Transports casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty transportation procedures.</p> <p>d. Relocates major items of equipment and supplies to safe areas.</p> <p>e. Conducts fire fighting operations until all threatening fires are extinguished.</p> <p>f. Employs NBC defense measures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Removes rubble, debris, and inoperative vehicles and equipment (mission essential only).</p> <p>h. Reports locations of fires and unexploded ordnance to control and assessment team using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>i. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Employs environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Platoon Headquarters and Supply Section
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (63-2-4226) (FM 3-3, FM 3-100, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, STP 21-1-SMCT, STP 21-24-SMCT)

CONDITIONS: Orders have been received from the higher HQ staff element to cross a chemically contaminated area. The area cannot be bypassed without unacceptable delay to the move. The unit has analog and/or digital communications with higher HQ. The higher HQ OPORD, unit TSOP, and higher HQ TSOP are available. The unit is currently located in an assembly area that provides concealment. MOPP level 2 has been designated and NBC reconnaissance, survey, and control teams are prepared for their respective missions. The unit’s NBC teams will confirm, during reconnaissance, the location of the contaminated area and the type of contamination. The higher HQ staff element has coordinated for additional chemical decontamination support. Assembly areas will be designated in concealed areas or road networks, as the tactical situation dictates. This task is performed in all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and ground Level I threat forces attack. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit crosses contaminated area by quickest route possible. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase task performance times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Leading convoy element employs immediate protective measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumes MOPP level 4. b. Conducts individual basic soldier skill decontamination, as necessary. *2. Convoy commander relays NBC information to march element(s). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notifies convoy element(s) of exact location and type of chemical contamination using analog and/or digital communications. b. Plots contaminated area on map overlays and in digital device. c. Provides required protective measures and MOPP level designation to march element(s). d. Designates assembly area for each element for preparation of crossing the contaminated area. e. Directs required protective measures and MOPP level for assembly areas. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Reports locations of assembly areas, halt time, and tentative resumption time to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Forwards NBC 1 chemical report to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>3. Convoy elements occupy assembly area(s).</p> <p>a. Move into assembly area without halting on the route of march.</p> <p>b. Establish perimeter security with 360-degree surveillance and crew-served weapons positioned along likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>c. Employ camouflage techniques, with emphasis on positioning mirrors toward the ground and parking vehicles in an area with overhead cover.</p> <p>d. Perform essential after-operation PMCS IAW applicable TM.</p> <p>*4. Convoy commander selects crossing route.</p> <p>a. Identifies possible routes by conducting a map reconnaissance of contaminated area.</p> <p>b. Conducts comparative analysis of chemical data received from higher HQ staff element, terrain analysis, and time factors for a route selection.</p> <p>c. Selects route that minimizes chemical contamination.</p> <p>d. Requests approval of selected route from higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*5. Convoy commander supervises crossing preparation activities.</p> <p>a. Briefs reconnaissance team on mission, communications, and actions to be performed on other side of the contaminated area.</p> <p>b. Directs reconnaissance team in the donning of full MOPP4 protective garments.</p> <p>c. Dispatches reconnaissance team to verify type of contamination and size of contaminated area.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Directs precautionary measures and MOPP level required for crossing.</p> <p>e. Assigns crossing time(s) for each march element.</p> <p>f. Assigns assembly area on the other side of contaminated area for each convoy element to perform operational decontamination.</p> <p>6. Chemical reconnaissance team conducts route survey.</p> <p>a. Selects distances between recon checkpoints based on tactical situation and time available.</p> <p>b. Selects recon checkpoints at locations where chemical agents are likely to collect as prescribed in FM 3-3.</p> <p>c. Detects chemical vapors by using M256 kit.</p> <p>d. Checks presence of liquids with M8/9 detector paper.</p> <p>e. Marks route with predetermined material.</p> <p>f. Records recon information, as collected.</p> <p>g. Forwards all recon information to the convoy commander after completion of survey.</p> <p>7. Unit prepares to cross contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Places all externally stored equipment inside vehicles.</p> <p>b. Covers equipment with available material.</p> <p>c. Closes all vehicle air vents and windows.</p> <p>d. Positions chemical detector paper as prescribed in FM 3-4.</p> <p>e. Dons MOPP4 protective gear.</p> <p>8. Convoy elements cross contaminated area.</p> <p>a. Follow route as marked by the reconnaissance party.</p> <p>b. Avoid low ground, overhead branches, and heavy brush.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Move as quickly as possible across contaminated area without unnecessary halts and delays.</p> <p>d. Verify that all vehicles have crossed the contaminated area before stopping.</p> <p>e. Forward crossing report to the higher HQ staff element when all convoy elements have crossed the contaminated area using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*9. Convoy commander supervises decontamination measures.</p> <p>a. Identifies level of required decontamination in coordination with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>b. Directs implementation of basic soldier skills and/or hasty decontamination based on type of contamination, weather, and tactical situation.</p> <p>10. Unit performs chemical decontamination.</p> <p>a. Initiates skin decontamination techniques within one minute of exposure to liquid contamination.</p> <p>b. Completes personal wipedown within 15 minutes of exit from contaminated area.</p> <p>c. Completes operator's spraydown within 15 minutes of personal wipedown.</p> <p>d. Employs safety measures to ensure DS2 does not touch personal or protective clothing.</p> <p>e. Decontaminates only those areas that would cause further contamination of personnel or equipment.</p> <p>f. Conducts MOPP gear exchange, if required.</p> <p>g. Forwards decontamination status report to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*11. Convoy commander coordinates resumption of road march.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates SP for all convoy elements to resume march. b. Reschedules check point and RP crossing times in coordination with higher HQ staff element. c. Provides new march instructions to all convoy elements. d. Directs covering and marking of contaminated runoff areas. e. Affixes locations of contaminated runoff areas on map overlays. f. Coordinates detailed decontamination with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications, if required. g. Forwards road march resumption report to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. <p>12. Unit performs movement march resumption activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Covers area(s) used for decontamination. b. Marks contaminated runoff areas. c. Decontaminates the decontamination personnel. d. Crosses new SP at time prescribed by the convoy commander. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NON-PERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (63-OPFOR-1001)

CONDITION: OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Deliver chemical agents in low lying and/or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting C2 system. 3. Restrict enemy units movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict casualties on enemy forces.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit HQ supervises guard force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tasks unit elements to man guard posts in the unit area. b. Establishes communication network that permits access to all guard posts. <p>3. Unit performs guard duty functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Mans positions or guard posts as designated by leader or special orders. b. Observes assigned sector. c. Employs challenge and password procedures as prescribed in the TSOP and SOI/SSI. d. Reports all suspicious activities to the guard commander or as prescribed in special orders. <p>*4. Commander and leaders direct response(s) against saboteurs or terrorists.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forward incident report to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. b. Direct perimeter manning level increases as prescribed by the TSOP. c. Maintain a current operations status of the situation. d. Provide continuous situation updates to the higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. e. Direct shifting of response force from assembly areas to threat contact area(s). f. Sound "All Clear" signal as soon as attack is over and intruders have been eliminated. g. Direct decrease in manning levels consistent with the tactical situation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Unit responds to saboteur or terrorist intrusions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupies predesignated fighting positions (designated personnel only). b. Reports to unit CP (personnel selected for response force). c. Recons assigned sector for threat activities. d. Fires at any target in area as prescribed by rules of engagement. e. Treats casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4517 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Transports casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed casualty transportation procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Performs mortuary affairs operations. <p>NOTE: See Task 10-2-4513 for detailed mortuary affairs procedures.</p> <p>*6. Commander supervises post-attack activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwards casualty and damage report(s) submitted by subelements to the higher HQ S1, S2/S3, and S4 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. b. Coordinates life support requirements caused by destruction of supplies, equipment, or personnel with the higher HQ staff S1 and S4 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. c. Coordinates replenishment of destroyed equipment and supplies with the higher HQ S4 using analog and/or digital communications. <p>NOTE: The unit requisitions equipment and supplies using ULLS-S4.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Directs unit elements to continue their assigned missions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (63-OPFOR-1013)

CONDITION: OPFOR dispatches small teams into enemy rear area to disrupt CSS operations.

STANDARD: 1. Locate rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit personnel protect equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cover all exposed equipment and supplies. b. Implement procedures to prevent further contamination IAW the TSOP. c. Monitor the area to determine contamination levels by testing with detector kits and paper. <p>*3. Unit leaders provide NBC reports to the higher HQ S2/S3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forward initial NBC 1 chemical report as soon as tactical situation permits using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. b. Request permission to move, if mission permits, using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. c. Coordinate with higher HQ S4 on for hasty or deliberate decontamination support using analog and/or digital communications. d. Forward follow-up NBC 1 chemical report within 20 minutes after the attack using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. <p>*4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures (if chemical agent detector kits indicate negative results).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct two individuals to conduct unmasking procedures. b. Observe directed individuals for 10 minutes for symptoms of illness. c. Observe directed individuals for delayed symptoms. d. Initiate "All Clear" signal, if no symptoms of chemical poisoning are detected. e. Report results to higher HQ S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger systems. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Unit personnel employ unmasking procedures (chemical agent detector kits indicate negative results).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Break the seal in a shady area (directed personnel). b. Remain unmasked for five minutes (directed personnel). c. Remask and clear masks (directed personnel). <p>NOTE: Task steps 6 and 7 are performed only if chemical agent detector kits are not available.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures (using M8/M9 detector paper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Check area for physical signs of liquid contamination using M8/M9 detector paper. b. Direct two individuals to conduct unmasking procedures. c. Observe directed individuals for 10 minutes for symptoms of chemical incapacitation. <p>NOTE: Wait 5 minutes after directed individuals have unmasked.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Observe directed individuals for another 10 minutes after they unmask again, for symptoms of chemical incapacitation. e. Initiate "All Clear" signal, if no symptoms appear. f. Report results to higher HQ S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. <p>7. Unit personnel employ unmasking procedures (using M8 detector paper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Check area for physical signs of liquid contamination using M8/M9 detector paper. b. Break mask seal in a shady area (directed individuals). c. Keep eyes open for 15 seconds (directed individuals). d. Clear mask (directed individuals). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Reseal mask (directed individuals).</p> <p>f. Remain masked for 10 minutes (directed individuals).</p> <p>g. Unmask for five minutes (directed individuals).</p> <p>h. Remask for 10 minutes (directed individuals).</p> <p>i. Initiate "All Clear" if no symptoms appear.</p> <p>j. Repeat unmasking procedures, steps b through i above, for remaining unit personnel.</p> <p>k. Report results to higher HQ S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>*8. Commander and leaders reorganize unit area.</p> <p>a. Establish Situational Awareness.</p> <p>b. Reestablish chain of command.</p> <p>c. Coordinate required unit MOPP level with the higher HQ S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>d. Inspect unit personnel to ensure that individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.</p> <p>e. Direct periodic chemical monitoring in the unit area.</p> <p>f. Supervise the request and distribution of replacement chemical defense equipment and supplies.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NON-PERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (63-OPFOR-1001)

CONDITION: OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: 1. Deliver chemical agents in low lying and/or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting C2 system. 3. Restrict enemy units movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict casualties on enemy forces.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Follows guidelines contained in the destruction plan, unit and battalion TSOPs, and EOD or engineer publications.</p> <p>g. Assigns tasks and responsibilities.</p> <p>h. Requests EOD or engineer support through S2/S3, as required.</p> <p>i. Consolidates destruction reports received from the platoons and sections.</p> <p>j. Provides consolidated destruction report to S2/S3 IAW TSOP.</p> <p>k. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>l. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. Platoon and section leaders supervise destruction or disabling of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>a. Identify supplies and equipment to be destroyed or disabled.</p> <p>b. Identify destruction or disabling method.</p> <p>c. Direct destruction or disabling of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>d. Report completed destruction to commander.</p> <p>e. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>f. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Platoon and section personnel destroy or disable tracked and wheeled vehicles (to include construction equipment).</p> <p>a. Drain the engine oil.</p> <p>b. Drain equipment hydraulic systems and cut hydraulic hoses.</p> <p>c. Slash all tires.</p> <p>d. Run engines until they seize, as applicable.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Burn hoses, belts, and so forth, as applicable.</p> <p>f. Destroy vital elements, such as the gearbox, starter, engine block, transmission, instrument panel, and any communication equipment.</p> <p>g. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>h. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Platoon and section personnel destroy or disable all critical supplies, computer and non computer related communications equipment, and COMSEC/IEW materiel.</p> <p>a. Record all COMSEC/IEW materiel identified for destruction or disablement.</p> <p>b. Destroy analog and/or digital communication components IAW with applicable TM.</p> <p>c. Burn COMSEC/IEW codes, keys, password lists, software, and any other perishable classified items.</p> <p>d. Destroy ETMs and other automated or nonautomated documents IAW TSOP.</p> <p>e. Destroy or render computer and computer related hardware and software inoperative IAW appropriate TM.</p> <p>f. Destroy supplies IAW appropriate TM and TSOP.</p> <p>g. Employ safety procedures IAW with applicable reference.</p> <p>h. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*5. Platoon and section leaders arrange for destruction of supplies and equipment with explosives.</p> <p>a. Identify items for destruction.</p> <p>b. Review explosive detonation procedures.</p> <p>c. Estimate type and amount of explosive material required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Provide commander with explosive material requirement estimate.</p> <p>e. Request EOD or engineer support, through commander, as required.</p> <p>*6. Platoon and section leaders submit status reports to the commander.</p> <p>a. Submit certificate of destruction of supply items destroyed by class of supply.</p> <p>b. Submit certificate of destruction of tracked and wheeled vehicles, construction equipment, and special purpose vehicles destroyed or disabled.</p> <p>c. Submit certificate of destruction of analog and/or digital communication equipment destroyed or disabled.</p> <p>d. Submit certificate of destruction of COMSEC/IEW items destroyed.</p> <p>e. Submit certificate of destruction of computer hardware and software destroyed.</p> <p>f. Submit report of platoon and section's capability to continue with assigned missions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Direct distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>g. Enforce QC procedures for Class VIII items issued to control team elements.</p> <p>2. Unit elements survey each casualty.</p> <p>a. Check for responsiveness.</p> <p>b. Check for breathing.</p> <p>c. Check for bleeding.</p> <p>d. Check for head injury.</p> <p>e. Check for shock.</p> <p>f. Check for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures.</p> <p>g. Check for burns.</p> <p>3. Unit elements administer life-saving treatment.</p> <p>a. Clear all objects from throat of casualty.</p> <p>b. Use jaw thrust method to open airway if cervical spine injury is suspected.</p> <p>c. Perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation to restore casualty's breathing IAW CPR procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit elements control hemorrhage.</p> <p>a. Apply manual direct pressure to wound.</p> <p>b. Elevate extremities.</p> <p>c. Apply pressure dressing to wound.</p> <p>d. Apply digital pressure-to-pressure points.</p> <p>e. Apply tourniquet as last resort.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Unit elements dress wounds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Apply occlusive dressing to an open chest wound, if possible. b. Apply dressing to an open abdominal wound. c. Apply dressing to an open head wound. <p>6. Unit elements splint suspected fractures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employ available materials to splint injury. b. Splint fracture in position found. c. Restrict movement of extremities. d. Check circulation for impairment. <p>7. Unit elements treat casualties with burns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Extinguish thermal burn agents. b. Remove chemical burn agent(s). c. Eliminate electrical burn source. d. Uncover burn unless stuck to clothing or a chemical environment exists. e. Apply field dressing. <p>8. Unit elements treat environmental injuries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Administer first aid for heat injuries. b. Administer first aid for heat stroke. c. Administer first aid for frostbite. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>9. Unit elements treat chemical casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Take immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others IAW FM 8-285. b. Protect casualty from further contamination. c. Administer nerve agent antidote IAW FM 21-11 and FM 8-285. d. Decontaminate casualty IAW FM 8-285, if necessary. <p>10. Unit elements prevent shock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position casualty in the correct anti-shock position IAW FM 21-11. b. Loosen clothing and equipment. c. Prevent casualty from chilling and overheating. d. Calm casualty by reassuring him. <p>11. Unit combat lifesavers perform advanced treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluate casualty for condition and type treatment needed. b. Measure casualty's vital signs. c. Record casualty's vital signs. <p>NOTE: Vital signs are monitored throughout treatment for abnormalities and required immediate action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Insert oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty. e. Apply a splint to a fractured limb. f. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties. g. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock. h. Identify environmental injuries. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Treat environmental injuries.		
j. Manage BF casualties.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1003	Clear an Object From the Throat of a Conscious Casualty	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1005	Prevent Shock	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	Give First Aid for Burns	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1008	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1009	Give First Aid for Frostbite	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	Put On a Field or Pressure Dressing	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	Put On a Tourniquet	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1034	Splint a Suspected Fracture	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1042	Perform Mouth-To-Mouth Resuscitation	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>j. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>k. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>l. Enforce food safety procedures IAW TB MED 530.</p> <p>m. Determine field kitchen equipment and food service personnel requirements.</p> <p>*2. Senior Food Operations Sergeant supervises field kitchen operations.</p> <p>a. Establishes operational hours as prescribed by the field feeding plan and commander's guidance or both.</p> <p>b. Prepares work schedules consistent with personnel availability and meal schedules.</p> <p>c. Monitors equipment operations, maintenance, and safety for compliance with appropriate TMs and TSOP.</p> <p>d. Coordinates additional supply requests with unit supply representative or other supply support element(s).</p> <p>e. Forwards food service personnel and equipment status reports to unit CP using analog and digital communications, wire, messenger or fax.</p> <p>f. Performs periodic inspections of personnel and equipment for proper operations and personal hygiene.</p> <p>g. Monitors employment of preventive medicine measures for compliance with field sanitation policies and procedures in the TSOP.</p> <p>h. Supervises decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel.</p> <p>i. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Food service personnel pick up and store subsistence items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspect vehicle for cleanliness and proper dunnage. b. Inspect subsistence items for condition and quantity. c. Prepare shortages, overages, and unsatisfactory subsistence listings. d. Sign required documentation. e. Transport subsistence items from Class I point to food preparation area. f. Store subsistence items IAW security measures and appropriate directives. g. Wash packaged or canned food after NBC attack. h. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. i. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures. j. Employ food safety procedures IAW TB MED 530. <p>4. Food service personnel prepare meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspect field kitchen equipment using appropriate TMs for proper operations. b. Employ personal hygiene measures. c. Perform preliminary food preparation procedures. d. Prepare menu items according to production schedule, when applicable. e. Employ field sanitation measures. f. Prepare food for transport. g. Employ safety measures IAW TSOP and publications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Employ environmental stewardship protection procedures.</p> <p>i. Inspect insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that they are preheated/pre-chilled.</p> <p>j. Inspect insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that the food is properly packed and labeled for remote feeding.</p> <p>k. Inspect that all items to support remote feeding are assembled and packed.</p> <p>l. Employ food safety procedures IAW TB MED 530.</p> <p>5. Food service personnel issue Class I to unit representative (1SG/Supply Sergeant).</p> <p>a. Verify headcount with 1SG/Supply Sergeant.</p> <p>b. Integrate prepared food and other Class I items into the next scheduled LOGPAC for delivery to supported unit (when applicable).</p> <p>c. Issue prepared food in insulated food containers.</p> <p>d. Issue beverages in beverage dispensers.</p> <p>e. Issue sanitized serving utensils, plates, cups, flatware, and condiments to support the meal.</p> <p>f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Employ environmental stewardship protective program procedures.</p> <p>6. Food service personnel/unit personnel (depending on the method of feeding) serve meals.</p> <p>a. Employ personal hygiene measures.</p> <p>b. Set up serving line as dictated by the tactical situation.</p> <p>c. Inspect mess kits (if used) to ensure they are sanitized prior to serving.</p> <p>d. Employ portion control.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Maintain food at proper temperature.</p> <p>f. Replenish food items.</p> <p>g. Destroy opened food after NBC attack.</p> <p>h. Employ safety measures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>i. Employ environmental stewardship program protection procedures.</p> <p>7. Food service personnel maintain equipment.</p> <p> a. Perform before, during, and after operations PMCS on assigned equipment.</p> <p> b. Maintain proper temperatures of wash and rinse water on wash line.</p> <p> c. Clean cooking equipment.</p> <p> d. Sanitize cooking equipment.</p> <p> e. Store clean equipment to allow air-drying.</p> <p> f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p> g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>8. Food service personnel perform waste disposal.</p> <p> a. Initiate effective trash management procedures.</p> <p> b. Perform liquid waste disposal.</p> <p> c. Perform solid waste disposal.</p> <p> d. Clean vehicle thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.</p> <p> e. Sanitize vehicle thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Employ field sanitation measures.		
g. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		
h. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
101-524-1102	Maintain Safety Standards	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1151	Perform Preliminary Food Preparation Procedures	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1152	Prepare and Cook Meat, Poultry, and Seafood	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1153	Prepare and Cook Vegetables	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1160	Prepare and Cook Fillings, Icing, and Glazes	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1161	Prepare and Bake Bread Products	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1162	Prepare and Cook Egg Products	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1163	Prepare and Cook Cereal, Rice, or Pasta Products	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1164	Prepare Beverage Products	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1165	Prepare and/or Cook Sandwiches	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1166	Store and Use Leftover Foods	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
101-524-1169	Prepare or Cook Salads and Salad Dressings	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1170	Prepare and Cook Soups, Sauces, and Gravies	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1171	Prepare Desserts and Pastries	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1205	Store Subsistence Items	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1206	Check Subsistence Supplies for Quantity and Condition	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1260	Perform Cleaning and Sanitation Services at a Field Kitchen	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1263	Store, Prepare, and Serve T Rations and B Rations	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-1264	Prepare Meals for Remote Site Feeding	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
101-524-3105	Conduct Daily Meetings With Personnel	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3106	Implement Security Procedures in a Dining Facility and at a Field Kitchen	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3107	Supervise the Preparing, Serving, and Storage of Food Items to Ensure Optimal Nutritional Value	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3159	Conduct Inventories and Process Inventory Records	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3160	Maintain Dining Facility Files	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3161	Prepare and Maintain the Cash Meal Payment Sheet and the Control Record	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3202	Request and Turn-in Subsistence Items Under the Army Field Feeding System (AFFS)	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3203	Receive and Turn-in Subsistence Items Under the Army Ration Credit System (ARCS)	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3254	Implement On-the-Job Training (OJT)	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
101-524-3257	Supervise Field Kitchen Sanitation Operations	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3260	Brief Headcounter and Process Headcount Forms	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3266	Supervise Personnel in the Operation, Cleaning, and Maintenance of Dining Facility Equipment	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3267	Supervise Personnel in the Operation, Cleaning, and Maintenance of the Field Feeding Equipment	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3268	Supervise the Receipt and Storage of Subsistence Items	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3275	Supervise the Operation and Maintenance of the Mobile Kitchen Trailer (MKT)	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3276	Monitor and Provide Technical Guidance for the Operation and Maintenance of the Kitchen Company Level Field Feeding (KCLFF)	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3278	Schedule Shift Work, Develop Work Schedules, and Supervise Food Service Personnel	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3279	Determine Requirements and Establish Procedures in Support of Field Operations	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-3282	Conduct Quality Assurance Evaluation of Food Preparation and Finished Products	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-4101	Assign Personnel to Duty Positions	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-524-4102	Develop the On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program	STP 10-92G25-SM-TG
101-92G-1103	Retain Nutrients in Food Products	STP 10-92G1-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Coordinate NBC and EOD assistance with the unit HQ using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>i. Coordinate security of search area with unit HQ using analog and/or digital communications messenger.</p> <p>j. Brief personnel.</p> <p>k. Relay the last known location (grid coordinates) of the remains if the recovery cannot be performed to higher headquarters.</p> <p>2. Search and recovery team leader(s) prepare for movement to recovery site.</p> <p>a. Conduct pre-inspection of all vehicles, soldier's personal equipment, and mission-essential equipment and forms.</p> <p>b. Develop a load plan.</p> <p>c. Supervise loading of equipment in accordance with load plans.</p> <p>d. Verify route.</p> <p>3. Search and recovery team(s) move to the recovery site.</p> <p>a. Conduct movement based upon tactical situation.</p> <p>b. Adhere to appropriate convoy or road-march procedures.</p> <p>4. Search and recovery team leader(s) supervise search, recovery, and evacuation operations.</p> <p>a. Determine the best search methods to use in the particular area.</p> <p>b. Ensure search is conducted during the daylight hours.</p> <p>c. Brief search and recovery team(s) on operational procedures.</p> <p>d. Ensure soldiers are wearing appropriate protective gear.</p> <p>e. Issue personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC agent tags.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Assign areas of search to each team of which the sum equals the entire search area, as directed by the commander.</p> <p>g. Assign a portion of the search area to an individual team member.</p> <p>h. Monitor search and recovery team(s) operations for compliance with TSOP and the commander's guidance.</p> <p>5. Search and recovery team(s) conducts the search.</p> <p>a. Search assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</p> <p>b. Mark locations of remains, portions, and personal effects with color-coded pin flags IAW FM 10-64.</p> <p>c. Initiate FMC for each remains IAW AR 40-66.</p> <p>d. Prepare recovery site sketch indicating locations where remains and personal effects were found.</p> <p>6. Search and recovery team(s) recovers remains.</p> <p>a. Inspect immediate area for booby traps and NBC contaminants.</p> <p>b. Ensure remains are covered or shrouded at all times when not being examined.</p> <p>c. Verify that DD Form 1380 is attached to the remains.</p> <p>d. Ensure DD Form 567 is prepared for each remains or to document mission if no remains are found.</p> <p>e. Ensure DD Form 565 is completed, if unit personnel knew the deceased.</p> <p>f. Ensure the areas around the remains are searched for personal effects and possible disassociated personal effects.</p> <p>g. Perform procedures for initial identification.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Attach to contagious remains a tag marked with a large "C", and the identity of each contagion and contaminant.</p> <p>NOTE: Remains found in a contaminated area are to be handled IAW procedures set forth in JTTP 4-06 and evacuated directly to the MACP.</p> <p>i. Place personal effects into personal effects bag, if available, and attach to remains.</p> <p>j. Prepare a sketch of the recovery site showing major landmarks.</p> <p>k. Prepare a map overlay of the recovery site using analog and/or digital devices or manually.</p> <p>l. Forward SITREP IAW TSOP to the unit HQ using analog and digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>m. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>7. Search and recovery team(s) evacuates remains to the nearest MACP.</p> <p>a. Coordinate evacuation of recovered remains to collection points with the support operations section using analog and digital communications.</p> <p>b. Ensure all records prepared at the recovery site are complete and accurate before departing the area.</p> <p>c. Ensure the remains are transported feet first.</p> <p>d. Ensure remains awaiting evacuation are shrouded from public view and guarded or escorted.</p> <p>e. Transport the remains in the most expedient manner possible to the nearest MACP.</p> <p>f. Ensure all transportation assets can provide cover for the remains while being transported.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Ensure a summary report is submitted to higher headquarters to document the search and recovery mission.</p> <p>NOTE: Remains should only be transported in an ambulance as a last resort.</p> <p>NOTE: If remains cannot be evacuated to a MACP in a timely manner, perform steps 8 and 9.</p> <p>8. Search and recovery team(s) leader supervises isolated interments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Identify specific isolated interment site in coordination with the unit HQ using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Supervise isolated interment marking IAW JTTP 4-06, FM 10-64, TSOP, and current directives</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Supervise the burial of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Report burial data to unit HQ using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>9. Search and recovery team(s) performs isolated interments.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Prepare the isolated interment site(s) IAW appropriate JTTP 4-06, FM 10-64, TSOP, and current directives.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Mark all interment sites IAW FM 10-64.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Identify environmental stewardship protective procedures. h. Brief personnel on the tactical situation, recovery plan and alternate plans. 3. Unit receives supplies and equipment. a. Secures DZ or AO. b. Derigs supplies and equipment. c. Records shortage. d. Identifies damaged items. e. Evacuates supplies and equipment. f. Retrieves airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buries or destroys airdrop rigging equipment that cannot be removed. h. Inspects the DZ or AO to make certain no serviceable airdrop equipment is left behind. i. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Supervises control of weapons and ammunition.</p> <p>f. Prepares input to MCSRs.</p> <p>g. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>h. Enforces environmental stewardship measures.</p> <p>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.</p> <p>a. Coordinate requirements with elements.</p> <p>b. Calculate resupply requirements.</p> <p>c. Record requests on appropriate document register.</p> <p>d. Forward resupply request to higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.</p> <p>a. Inspect incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</p> <p>b. Record receipt on appropriate document register.</p> <p>c. Store supplies IAW storage plans.</p> <p>d. Notify requesting element of availability of supply for issue.</p> <p>5. Supply personnel issue supplies.</p> <p>a. Process supply requests IAW appropriate regulations, directives, and TSOP.</p> <p>b. Prepare transaction documents IAW appropriate regulations, directives, and TSOP.</p> <p>c. Issue supplies as prescribed by commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Maintain prescribed copies of transactions IAW appropriate regulations and directives.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Control stored weapons and ammunition IAW appropriate regulations and command policies. b. Request ammunition resupply from S4 Section. c. Perform unit-level maintenance on small arms. d. Forwards weapons beyond organizational repair capabilities to support maintenance elements. e. Employs safety procedures. f. Employs environmental stewardship protective procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. LZ officer/NCO supervises external slingload resupply operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies wind direction and speed. b. Transmits wind direction and speed to incoming aircraft as requested. c. Identifies aircraft approach direction. d. Prepares LZ emergency security and reaction plan. e. Identifies ground crew(s) rendezvous or rally point(s). f. Secures all required LZ marking and personnel protection equipment. g. Organizes ground crew team(s). h. Briefs ground crew team(s) on tactical situation, size of operation, preparation and clearance of LZ, emergency procedures, protective equipment and safety precautions. i. Assigns individual team member duties. j. Supervises derigging operations. k. Supervises loading of supplies and/or equipment on motor transport vehicles. l. Supervises LZ clearance activities. m. Enforces safety procedures. <p>3. Ground crew(s) perform LZ preparation activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Remove all obstructions from LZ. b. Mark all unremovable obstructions. c. Clear all loose debris from the LZ. d. Set up all required visual markers. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Position vehicles and other special equipment out of the LZ.</p> <p>f. Rehearse hand or arm and other visual signals.</p> <p>4. Ground crew(s) derig external slingload supplies or equipment.</p> <p>a. Wear hearing and eye protection.</p> <p>b. Employ safety procedures.</p> <p>c. Employ visual signals to guide helicopter to derigging point.</p> <p>d. Ground static discharge probe to cargo hook.</p> <p>e. Release load from helicopter.</p> <p>f. Provide "affirmative" signal to pilot for lift-off when load is unhooked and clear of helicopter.</p> <p>5. Ground crew(s) prepare slings and/or nets for air transport retrograde.</p> <p>a. Remove cargo sling and/or nets from supplies or equipment.</p> <p>b. Secure all slings and/or nets in a cargo net.</p> <p>c. Employ proper hand signals to guide helicopter into position.</p> <p>d. Ground static discharge probe to net rings.</p> <p>e. Connect sling equipment to helicopter cargo hook.</p> <p>f. Provide "affirmative" signal to pilot for lift-off when net is secure and all personnel are clear.</p> <p>6. Ground crew(s) and vehicle operator(s) clear LZ.</p> <p>a. Load all supplies or equipment on vehicle(s).</p> <p>b. Load all slings and/or nets and markers on vehicle(s).</p> <p>c. Remove all loose debris from LZ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Vessel receives necessary repairs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Access damage to vessel. b. Identify required materials to repair vessel. c. Pump out any flooded compartments. d. Repair vessel as necessary to ensure vessel is watertight. e. Repair damaged machinery as necessary. f. Provide the LCP with the final status of repairs. <p>4. Vessel is returned to operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Push vessel from the beach using a bulldozer with a padded blade. b. Rig tow from astern of vessel to stern of salvage vessel to assist in retraction. c. Inspect repaired vessel for water tightness. d. Request instructions from the LCP and proceed as directed. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel. b. Verifies load and receives jumpers. c. Conducts safety briefing. d. Maintains communications with key leaders. e. Identifies frustrated cargo. f. Starts loading operations. g. Verifies weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of loaded pieces by type. h. Ensures load is secured as necessary. i. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed. <p>*4. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from ship and towards the discharge site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives instructions from SLCP to cast off lines and clear from ship. b. Departs from ship. c. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. d. Verifies information from the LCC on proposed landing site. e. Maneuvers vessel to the discharge site. <p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel for discharging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Re-establishes communication with BLCP as instructed. b. Receives instructions for discharge. c. Prepares vessel for approach. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Secures vessel at landing site.</p> <p>e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured.</p> <p>*6. First Mate/Coxswain supervises discharge operations.</p> <p>a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to discharging of vessel.</p> <p>b. Receives PSA drivers/jumpers.</p> <p>c. Conducts safety briefing.</p> <p>d. Maintains communications with key leaders.</p> <p>e. Discharges cargo.</p> <p>f. Provides weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of discharged pieces by type to BLCP.</p> <p>g. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of cargo and receives retraction instructions.</p> <p>*7. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel.</p> <p>a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit to operational area.</p> <p>b. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel. b. Verifies load and receives jumpers. c. Conducts safety briefing. d. Maintains communications with key leaders. e. Identifies and documents frustrated cargo. f. Starts loading operations. g. Verifies weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of loaded pieces by type. h. Ensures vehicles are secured and have drip pans. i. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed. <p>*4. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from ship and towards the causeway.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives instructions from SLCP to cast off lines and clear from ship. b. Departs from ship. c. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. d. Maneuvers vessel to the causeway. <p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel for discharging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Re-establishes communication with BLCP as instructed. b. Receives instructions for discharge. c. Prepares vessel for causeway approach. d. Secures vessel on causeway. e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured to causeway. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Receives briefing from pier NCO.</p> <p>g. Discharges cargo and equipment from vessel.</p> <p>*6. The causeway crew receives rolling stock and cargo over the pier.</p> <p> a. Briefs drivers, stevedores, and other exercise participants on pier safety.</p> <p> b. Directs exercise participants to stage equipment in appropriated staging area.</p> <p> c. Enforces safety on pier at all times.</p> <p> d. Maintains communications with key leaders.</p> <p> e. Records all equipment and cargo.</p> <p> f. Maintains the pier IAW checklist.</p> <p> g. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of cargo and equipment.</p> <p>*7. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel from causeway.</p> <p> a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit from causeway.</p> <p> b. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Communicates with ships vessel master/first mate to lower ramp onto RRDF.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with JLCC/LCC when RRDF is in place.</p> <p>k. Maintains RRDF IAW check list.</p> <p>*2. Vessel master/coxswain receives instructions from JLCC/LCC to proceed to ship for loading.</p> <p>a. Establishes communications SLCP.</p> <p>b. Prepares vessel for transit.</p> <p>c. Determines approach lane IAW existing conditions (for example, weather, vessel traffic, and existing seas states).</p> <p>*3. Vessel master/coxswain and crew secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>a. Wears personal flotation device, hardhat, safety shoes, and gloves.</p> <p>b. Properly secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>c. Adjusts vessel position to accommodate the best way of loading the equipment.</p> <p>d. Deploys cargo ramp for loading.</p> <p>*4. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <p>a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel.</p> <p>b. Conducts safety briefing.</p> <p>c. Verifies weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of loaded pieces by type.</p> <p>d. Starts loading operations.</p> <p>e. Maintains communications with key leaders.</p> <p>f. Enforces safety at all times.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Ensures load is secured as necessary.</p> <p>h. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed.</p> <p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from ship and towards the discharge site.</p> <p>a. Receives instructions from SLCP to retract from RRDF.</p> <p>b. Departs from RRDF.</p> <p>c. Reestablishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.</p> <p>d. Verifies information from the LCC on proposed landing site.</p> <p>e. Maneuvers vessel to the discharge site.</p> <p>*6. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel for discharging.</p> <p>a. Reestablishes communication with BLCP as instructed.</p> <p>b. Receives instructions for discharge.</p> <p>c. Prepares vessel for approach.</p> <p>d. Secures vessel at landing site.</p> <p>e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured.</p> <p>f. Deploys cargo ramp for discharging.</p> <p>*7. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the discharging of cargo.</p> <p>a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to discharging of vessel.</p> <p>b. Receives PSA drivers/jumpers.</p> <p>c. Conducts safety briefing.</p> <p>d. Maintains communications with key leaders.</p> <p>e. Discharges cargo.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Provides weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of discharged pieces by type to BLCP. g. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of cargo and receives retraction instructions. *8. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel from causeway. a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit from causeway. b. Reestablishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Communicates with ships vessel master/first mate to lower ramp onto RRDF.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with LCC when RRDF is in place.</p> <p>*2. Vessel master/coxswain receives instructions from the JLCC/LCC to proceed to ship for loading.</p> <p>a. Establishes communications with SLCP.</p> <p>b. Prepares vessel for transit.</p> <p>c. Determines approach lane IAW existing conditions (for example, weather, vessel traffic, and existing seas states).</p> <p>*3. Vessel master/coxswain and crew secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>a. Ensures crewmembers are in proper uniform (for example work vests, hard hats, and so on).</p> <p>b. Properly secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>c. Adjusts vessel position to accommodate the best way of loading vehicles.</p> <p>d. Deploys cargo ramp for loading cargo.</p> <p>*4. First mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <p>a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel.</p> <p>b. Briefs PSA drivers and ground guides.</p> <p>c. Maintains communications with key leaders and LCC.</p> <p>d. Starts loading operations.</p> <p>e. Verifies weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of vehicles by type.</p> <p>f. Ensures all vehicles on vessel are secured with chock blocks and have drip pans.</p> <p>g. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from RRDF and towards the beach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives instructions from BLCP to retract from RRDF. b. Departs from RRDF. c. Reestablishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. d. Maneuvers vessel to the beach. <p>*6. Vessel Master/Coxswain beaches vessel for discharging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablishes communication with BLCP as instructed. b. Receives instructions for discharge. c. Prepares vessel for beaching. d. Secures vessel on beach. e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured to beach. f. Deploys cargo ramp for discharging. <p>*7. First mate/Coxswain supervises the discharging of vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and briefs the key leader PSA drivers prior to discharging of vessel. b. Maintains communications with key leaders. c. Ensures ground guides are in proper uniform. d. Ensures ground guides are used when discharging vehicles. e. Provides weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of discharged vehicles by type to BLCP. f. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of cargo and receives retraction instructions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*8. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel from beach.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit from beach.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Reestablishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.</p> <p>9. The coxswain, crew, and pilot untie and unsecure the RRDF from ship.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Informs vessel master of departure plans.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Unties lines.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Pulls fenders up onto RRDF.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Casts off from its mooring operate SLWT as directed by pilot.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Reestablishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Communicates with ships vessel master/first mate to lower ramp onto RRDF.</p> <p>j. Notifies JLCC/LCC when RRDF is in place.</p> <p>k. Maintains RRDF IAW check list.</p> <p>*2. Vessel master/coxswain receives instructions from JLCC/LCC to proceed to ship for loading.</p> <p>a. Establishes communications with SLCP.</p> <p>b. Prepares vessel for transit.</p> <p>c. Determines approach lane IAW existing conditions (for example, weather, vessel traffic, and existing seas states).</p> <p>*3. Vessel master/coxswain and crew secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>a. Wears personal flotation devices.</p> <p>b. Properly secures vessel to RRDF.</p> <p>c. Adjusts vessel position to accommodate the best way of loading the equipment.</p> <p>d. Deploys cargo ramp for loading.</p> <p>*4. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <p>a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel.</p> <p>b. Conducts safety briefing.</p> <p>c. Maintains communications with key leaders.</p> <p>d. Starts loading operations.</p> <p>e. Records the number of vehicles loaded.</p> <p>f. Ensures all vehicles loaded on vessel are secured and have drip pans.</p> <p>g. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from ship and towards the causeway.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives instructions from SLCP to retract from RRDF. b. Departs from RRDF. c. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. d. Maneuvers vessel to the causeway. <p>*6. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel for discharging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Re-establishes communication with BLCP as instructed. b. Receives instructions for discharge. c. Prepares vessel for causeway approach. d. Secures vessel to causeway. e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured to causeway. f. Deploys cargo ramp for discharging. g. Coordinates with pier NCO for discharging rolling stock over the pier. h. First mate/coxswain supervises discharging rolling stock from vessel. i. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharging rolling stock and receives retraction instructions. <p>*7. The causeway crew receives rolling stock over the pier.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Pier NCO briefs drivers and other exercise participants on pier safety. b. Directs exercise participants to stage equipment in appropriate staging area. c. Enforces safety on pier at all times. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Maintains communications with key leaders. e. Records the number of pieces of equipment, which crosses the pier. f. Maintains the pier IAW checklist. g. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of rolling stock. *8. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel from causeway. a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit from causeway. b. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Maneuver vessel to far beach discharge site. g. Discharge cargo. h. Return to the assembly area. i. Contact near beach LCC upon arrival at the assembly area.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*3. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the loading of the vessel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to loading of vessel. b. Verifies load and receives jumpers. c. Conducts safety briefing. d. Maintains communications with key leaders. e. Identifies frustrated cargo. f. Starts loading operations. g. Verifies weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of loaded pieces by type. h. Ensures load is secured as necessary. i. Notifies the SLCP that loading is completed. <p>*4. Vessel Master/Coxswain maneuvers vessel away from ship and towards the beach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives instructions from SLCP to cast off lines and clear from ship. b. Departs from ship. c. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. d. Maneuvers vessel to the beach. <p>*5. Vessel Master/Coxswain beaches vessel for discharging.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Re-establishes communication with BLCP as instructed. b. Receives instructions for discharge. c. Prepares vessel for beaching. d. Secures vessel on beach. e. Notifies BLCP that vessel is secured to beach. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*6. First Mate/Coxswain supervises the discharging of cargo.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and briefs the key leader prior to discharging of vessel. b. Receives PSA drivers. c. Conducts safety briefing. d. Maintains communications with key leaders. e. Discharges cargo. f. Provides weights, piece count, bumper numbers, and number of discharged pieces by type to BLCP. g. Notifies BLCP upon completion of discharge of cargo and receives retraction instructions. <p>*7. Vessel Master/Coxswain retracts vessel from beach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares vessel for retraction and transit from beach. b. Re-establishes communications with the JLCC/LCC for instructions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Contact the BLCP upon departure from the ship to receive beaching instructions.</p> <p>f. Beach as directed by the BLCP.</p> <p>g. Notify the BLCP when cargo is discharged.</p> <p>h. Use antibroaching measures.</p> <p>i. Retract from the beach.</p> <p>j. Return to assigned cueing circle.</p> <p>k. Contact the shipboard LCP for loading instructions.</p> <p>3. Vessel crew defends vessel against a hostile attack.</p> <p>a. Execute Battle Drill 5 (Defend the Vessel from Air and Surface Attack).</p> <p>b. Execute Battle Drill 6 (Conduct Nuclear and Chemical Defense Measures).</p> <p>c. Execute Battle Drill 1 (Rescue Man Overboard).</p> <p>d. Execute Battle Drill 3 (Control and Extinguish an Onboard Fire).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Vessels respond to a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Execute Battle Drill 6 (Conduct NBC Defense Measures). b. Forward SITREP to the higher HQ staff element. c. Conduct partial decontamination of vessels and personnel. d. Reorganize convoy. e. Proceed to the discharge point. <p>4. Vessels in convoy sustain damage from underwater mines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Execute Battle Drill 2 (React to Collision). b. Execute Battle Drill 3 (Control and Extinguish Onboard Fires). c. Execute Battle Drill 1 (Rescue Man Overboard). d. Report engagement to the higher HQ staff element. e. Execute Battle Drill 4 (Abandon Ship). f. Maintain 360 degree security as undamaged vessels assist with recovery of personnel and disabled vessels. g. Reorganize the convoy. h. Proceed to the discharge point. <p>5. Vessels respond to hostile air attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Execute Battle Drill 5 (Defend the Vessel from Air and Surface Attack). b. Execute Battle Drill 3 (Control and Extinguish Onboard Fires). c. Reorganize convoy. d. Proceed to discharge point. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>6. The convoy arrives at the discharge point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Discharges personnel and cargo. b. Retracts from the beach. c. Proceeds to the designated assembly area. d. Departs the area in tactical formation. e. Proceeds to the vessel decontamination point. f. Decontaminates vessels according to the battalion or unit SOP. g. Advises the higher HQ staff element of personnel and vessel status. h. Proceeds to the designated anchorage for stand-down maintenance. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
551-728-1503	Fight Fires With Mechanical Foam Nozzle	STP 55-88H1-SM STP 55-88K14-SM-TG STP 55-88L1-SM
551-728-1504	Fight Fire With CO2 Fire Extinguisher	STP 55-88H1-SM STP 55-88K14-SM-TG STP 55-88L1-SM
551-728-1505	Fight Fire With Dry Chemical Fire Extinguisher	STP 55-88H1-SM STP 55-88K14-SM-TG STP 55-88L1-SM
551-728-1506	Fight Fire With Water	STP 55-88H1-SM STP 55-88K14-SM-TG STP 55-88L1-SM
551-728-3501	Supervise Fighting Fires On Board Vessels	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
 Platoon Headquarters and Supply Section
 Maintenance and Salvage Section
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
 Maintenance Section

TASK: Set Up Logistics Operations Center (63-2-4012) (FM 10-27-3, AR 530-1, FM 100-14, FM 10-27-2, FM 20-3, FM 21-10, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-4, FM 4-25.12, FM 5-103, FM 63-2, FM 63-20, FM 63-21, FM 63-2-1)

CONDITIONS: The commander has briefed unit leaders on the occupation plan. The general location of the LOC has been identified. The unit has analog and/or digital communications with higher HQ. The advance/quartering party has established the forward CP and has completed some preliminary preparations. Higher HQ TSOP and layout plan are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: External layout of the LOC is completed IAW higher HQ layout plan and TSOP, and within the prescribed time frame.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*1. Commander/first sergeant supervises establishment of the LOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates final locations with higher HQ staff element and communications chief. b. Supervises positioning of vehicles and tentage IAW the layout plan. c. Supervises employment of camouflage and concealment measures to ensure consistency with current tactical situation. d. Supervises construction of barriers around LOC area. e. Coordinates set up of communications equipment with higher HQ communications staff element using analog and/or digital communications. f. Establishes LOC entrance and exit guard posts IAW instructions in the TSOP and/or higher HQ staff element's guidance. g. Designates helicopter landing area in coordination with the higher HQ staff element. h. Enforces safety procedures IAW RSOP and applicable publications. i. Enforces environmental stewardship program procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Unit sets up the LOC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions all vehicles IAW layout plan. b. Sets up tentage IAW layout plan. c. Remotes radios and generators. d. Constructs noise barriers for all generators. e. Camouflages all equipment, tentage, and vehicles. f. Constructs concertina wire barrier around the LOC. g. Employs safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. h. Employs environmental stewardship program procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Unit HQ performs equipment status reporting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates elements' equipment status reports. b. Forwards equipment status reports to higher HQ staff element NLT time specified in the OPORD and TSOP using analog and/or digital communications. <p>4. Unit HQ processes replacements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspects all replacement personnel for proper weapons, MOPP gear, equipment, clothing, and shot records. b. Briefs replacements on tactical situation. c. Briefs replacements on chain of command and specific duties. d. Issues required supplies and equipment. e. Escorts unit replacements to assigned area. f. Records replacement data on battle reports. g. Coordinates transportation for movement of replacement individuals for supported unit to the gaining activity using analog and/or digital communications. h. Coordinates with support medical element for required immunizations using analog and/or digital communications. <p>5. Unit HQ provides administrative support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwards 100 percent accurate personnel and finance support requests to higher HQ staff element within 24 hours using analog and/or digital communications. b. Coordinates UCMJ actions with the battalion legal clerk using analog and/or digital communications. c. Administers unit awards program IAW procedures prescribed in the higher HQ TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Provides unit-level mail service as prescribed by appropriate regulations and unit TSOP.</p> <p>e. Maintains classified materials IAW appropriate regulations.</p> <p>6. Unit HQ implements microcomputer and ULC security procedures (Digital Units Only).</p> <p>a. Establishes "controlled access" procedures to ULC and microcomputer area(s).</p> <p>b. Restricts access to computers by use of classified passwords.</p> <p>c. Rotates operator passwords every 30 days or earlier if compromise is suspected.</p> <p>d. Monitors ULC and microcomputers for proper usage.</p> <p>e. Establishes computer report distribution procedures.</p> <p>7. Unit HQ provides health, welfare, and morale support.</p> <p>a. Coordinates for the distribution of specialty packs and sundry items IAW higher HQ OPORD and TSOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Monitors unit field feeding for compliance with the TSOP.</p> <p>c. Monitors unit sleep and rest plan for compliance with the TSOP.</p> <p>d. Supervises physical conditioning program.</p> <p>e. Coordinates laundry and shower exchange support with the S4 section using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Coordinates for religious activity support using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Disseminates health, welfare, and morale support information to all subelements using analog and/or digital communications.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.</p> <p>h. Implement buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among the soldiers and leaders.</p> <p>*2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan.</p> <p>a. Provide a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</p> <p>b. Adjust sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation.</p> <p>c. Enforce the sleep plan IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>*3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.</p> <p>a. Alternate cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</p> <p>b. Rotate unit personnel between demanding and non-demanding tasks.</p> <p>c. Assign two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</p> <p>d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</p> <p>*4. Leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques.</p> <p>a. Integrate new unit members into the unit immediately.</p> <p>b. Assist soldiers in resolving family/home-related problems.</p> <p>c. Provide instruction on relaxation technique to all personnel prior to deployment.</p> <p>d. Conduct routine after-action stress debriefings.</p> <p>e. Conduct unit award, decoration, recognition and memorial ceremonies.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*5. Commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implement a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assign soldiers who show signs of stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Direct personnel to be supportive of BF or stressed soldiers. d. Refer soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to supporting MTF for medical evaluation. e. Reintegrate RTD soldiers into their specific element. <p>6. Unit personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Comply with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identify other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provide immediate buddy aid support. e. Report signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to immediate supervisor. f. Accept new unit members immediately. g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participate in buddy system and after-action stress debriefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>3. Unit personnel segregate EPW.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Segregate EPW by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Treat EPW casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Transport EPW casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 63-2-4316 for detailed transportation procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Report casualties to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel silence EPW.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Prevent EPW leaders from giving orders.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Prevent communications between captured personnel.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Conduct no conversations in front of EPW except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</p> <p>5. Unit personnel transport EPW to the rear.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Remove EPW from dangers of the immediate battle area.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Prevent abuse of EPW by fellow soldiers or local populace.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Transport EPW to the nearest collection point by vehicle.</p> <p>NOTE: If transportation is unavailable and time and distance factors permit, march EPW to the nearest collection point; if EPWs are held, water and rations must be provided.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Unit personnel report capture of documents or equipment to S3, Plans-Operations Branch.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Process reports on documents and equipment IAW FM 34-54 and the TSOP.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Request disposition of captured documents and equipment from the Plans-Operations Branch, S2/S3, and S4 section using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Tag all captured documents and equipment before evacuation.</p> <p>3. Unit executes approved disposition of captured documents and equipment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Evacuate captured equipment IAW disposition instructions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Destroy the captured equipment (less medical) IAW disposition instructions.</p> <p>NOTE: If tactical situation does not permit equipment destruction or evacuation, or other special instructions exist, abandon captured equipment IAW disposition instructions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Evacuate documents through Plan-Operations Branch to intelligence personnel.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (63-OPFOR-1011)

CONDITION: OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. FST supervises unit field sanitation activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains field sanitation basic load. b. Supervises distribution of field sanitation basic load items. c. Tests unit water supply for required chlorine residual. d. Monitors personnel to ensure use of protective measures against arthropods (skin, repellent, bed net, clothing, and bed net repellent) and rodents IAW applicable directives and commander's guidance. e. Monitors personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures such as handwashing. f. Supervises installation of appropriate latrine facilities based on terrain. g. Inspects latrines and urinals. h. Inspects liquid and solid waste disposal facilities. i. Inspects hand-washing devices IAW TSOP. j. Inspects transport, storage, preparation, and service of food. k. Provides advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. l. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications m. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>3. Unit elements employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain prescribed load of water purification materials. b. Prepare nonpotable water for personal use. c. Consume only water designated as potable. d. Maintain latrines and hand washing facilities. e. Employ preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Employ personal hygiene measures. g. Employ preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing and bed net repellent. h. Report field sanitation deficiencies to FST. i. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. j. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Disseminate transportation information to unit personnel using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ staff element IAW TSOP and FM 12-6 using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>2. Unit elements prepare casualties for transport.</p> <p>a. Treat casualties.</p> <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.63-0001 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <p>b. Report casualties using analog and/or digital communications or messenger, as required.</p> <p>c. Collect classified documents such as SOI/SSI, maps, overlays, and key lists.</p> <p>d. Secure custody of organizational equipment IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>e. Forward spot casualty reports to unit HQ IAW TSOP using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>3. Unit elements transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <p>a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</p> <p>b. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>4. Unit elements transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <p>a. Identify litter team(s).</p> <p>b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</p> <p>c. Secure casualty on litter.</p> <p>d. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Unit elements transport casualties to a MTF using available vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Load maximum number of casualties with the most seriously injured last IAW FM 8-10-6; this will allow a "last in, first out" unloading procedure. b. Secure casualties in vehicle. c. Transport casualties without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6. <p>*6. Commander and leaders request aeromedical transportation, as needed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Transmit request IAW OPORD, TSOP, and FM 8-10-6 using analog and/or digital communications. b. Select landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and takeoff IAW FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38. c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival. d. Supervise security of landing site IAW the TSOP. <p>7. Unit elements assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques IAW FM 8-10-6. b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew. c. Load casualty without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employ safety procedures IAW the TSOP and FM 8-10-6. e. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>8. Unit elements transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assume MOPP4. b. Mark contaminated casualties IAW the TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Notify supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Transport casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</p> <p>e. Protect casualty from further contamination during transport.</p> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <p>a. Maintain security of EPW casualties IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to transport.</p> <p>c. Transport EPW casualties IAW the provisions of the Geneva Convention agreements and the TSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions. b. Identify all unwarranted risks. c. Compare identified risk to acceptable risk level stated in the commander's intent and based on the training objective. d. Calculate projected equipment and personnel losses from accidents by reviewing historical records. e. Describe operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low). f. Prepare courses of action that minimize accidental losses. <p>*3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select course of action that maximizes operational effectiveness and minimizes risks. b. Develop procedures that reduce risk. c. Provide guidance that enhances safety in all phases of operation. d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhances safety and reduces risks. e. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>4. Unit personnel employ safety enhancement procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations. b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot. c. Report to unit safety officer risk or safety violations beyond unit's corrective level. d. Employ environmental stewardship protection program. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Directs controlled exchange, IAW command guidance, when required repair parts are not available.</p> <p>g. Approves repairs using BDAR procedures.</p> <p>h. Prepares materiel condition status reports for input into ULLS-G system.</p> <p>i. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*2. Platoon sergeants and leaders supervise operator's maintenance.</p> <p>a. Supervise performance of PMCS.</p> <p>b. Monitor repair parts supply processes in order to better forecast the availability or nonavailability of equipment.</p> <p>c. Inspect vehicles, weapons, and equipment to ensure compliance with TMs, TSOP, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Coordinate maintenance assistance with maintenance personnel.</p> <p>e. Maintain current maintenance status of all vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</p> <p>f. Provide input for materiel condition status reports.</p> <p>g. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>h. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel perform operator's maintenance.</p> <p>a. Perform PMCS on all vehicles and equipment according to the appropriate TM specifications.</p> <p>b. Notify supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities.</p> <p>c. Assist maintenance personnel with repairs and services.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Request approval for BDAR from commander through appropriate NCO support channels and chain of command.</p> <p>e. Perform BDAR IAW FM 9-43-2.</p> <p>f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*4. Senior Maintenance Supervisor supervises maintenance section.</p> <p>a. Verifies ULLS-G system operability and operator competency.</p> <p>b. Organizes unit maintenance personnel for an efficient workflow.</p> <p>c. Requests approval for BDAR from appropriate commander.</p> <p>d. Supervises BDAR procedures IAW TSOP and FM 9-43-2.</p> <p>e. Supervises TAMMS, PLL procedures for unit and supported unit.</p> <p>f. Supervises recovery operations for unit and supported unit.</p> <p>g. Coordinates maintenance status with unit and supported unit platoon sergeants and ISGs.</p> <p>h. Requests controlled exchange approval from appropriate commander.</p> <p>i. Provides unit maintenance status to unit and supported unit commanders.</p> <p>j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>k. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>5. Maintenance personnel repair organic and supported unit equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verify fault diagnosis/category of maintenance. b. Request required repair parts. c. Repair equipment according to the applicable level TM specifications. d. Record completed work on appropriate document(s). e. Perform final inspection of completed work. f. Notify supervisor upon completion of repairs. g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures. h. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. <p>6. Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify category of maintenance. b. Correct all unit-level maintenance deficiencies. c. Prepare required documentation according to the TM and TSOP. d. Evacuate equipment to supporting maintenance facilities. e. Pick up equipment upon completion of repairs. f. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. g. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures. <p>7. Maintenance personnel react to battle damaged vehicle(s) (recoverable).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request direct and/or indirect supporting fire, if required. b. Move on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle(s). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Treat casualties according to the current treatment procedures.</p> <p>d. Remove casualties from the vehicle without causing further injuries.</p> <p>e. Request medical assistance, if required.</p> <p>f. Evacuate casualties according to medical evacuation procedures.</p> <p>g. Tow the vehicle to a concealed location, if required.</p> <p>h. Perform BDAR IAW FM 9-43-2.</p> <p>i. Repair vehicle if possible.</p> <p>j. Evacuate nonrepairable vehicle(s) to unit maintenance collection point(s).</p> <p>k. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and FM 9-43-2.</p> <p>l. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>8. Maintenance personnel react to battle-damaged vehicle(s) (unrecoverable).</p> <p>a. Request direct and/or indirect supporting fire if required.</p> <p>b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle(s).</p> <p>c. Treat casualties according to the current treatment procedures.</p> <p>d. Remove casualties from the vehicle(s).</p> <p>e. Request medical assistance if required.</p> <p>f. Evacuate casualties according to the medical evacuation procedures.</p> <p>g. Perform BDAR IAW FM 9-43-2.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Request disposition of unrecoverable vehicle(s) from appropriate commander.</p> <p>i. Conduct salvage operations as directed by the appropriate commander or maintenance supervisor.</p> <p>j. Prepare vehicle(s) for destruction.</p> <p>k. Destroy vehicle(s) on order from the appropriate commander or designated representative.</p> <p>l. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>m. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>9. Maintenance personnel perform maintenance administrative and support functions.</p> <p>a. Maintain unit and supported unit's PLL.</p> <p>b. Request repair parts for the unit and supported unit's organizational equipment.</p> <p>c. Control unserviceable repairable items.</p> <p>d. Maintain separate document register(s) for each unit according to applicable directives.</p> <p>e. Maintain separate maintenance control records for the unit and supported unit.</p> <p>f. Operate ULLS-G computer according to the appropriate ETM.</p> <p>g. Maintain publications, tools, and equipment.</p> <p>h. Maintain power generators.</p> <p>i. Employ safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Employ environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Coordinates with supply section to ensure smooth parts flow.</p> <p>i. Provides daily personnel and equipment status reports to the unit.</p> <p>j. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>*2. MCO and NCOIC supervise maintenance repair platoons.</p> <p>a. Inspect platoon operations to ensure repairs are done based on job priority.</p> <p>b. Verify job status information provided by repair platoons for timeliness and accuracy.</p> <p>c. Direct cross-leveling of repair assets as priorities change.</p> <p>d. Identify actions that accelerate work flow process IAW internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p>e. Implement actions that accelerate work flow process IAW internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p>f. Enforce safety procedures.</p> <p>3. MCS implements production control procedures.</p> <p>a. Assigns job order number for each request received.</p> <p>b. Coordinates initial inspection with the inspection element.</p> <p>c. Establishes maintenance repair priorities to ensure highest priority jobs are completed first.</p> <p>d. Assigns maintenance requests to appropriate work sections.</p> <p>e. Monitors current status of work requests throughout work flow process to maximize shop operations.</p> <p>f. Maintains current work request status.</p> <p>g. Manages repair resources to ensure resources are on hand when needed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Coordinates with accountable officer for evacuation of equipment if backlog levels or repair time guidelines established by the TAMMC are exceeded or if guidelines of internal SOP or TSOP are exceeded.</p> <p>i. Monitors the quality control program for compliance with the internal SOP.</p> <p>j. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>*4. MCO and NCOIC supervise maintenance repair platoons.</p> <p>a. Inspect platoon operations to ensure repairs are done based on job priority.</p> <p>b. Verify job status information provided by repair platoons for timeliness and accuracy.</p> <p>c. Direct cross-leveling of repair assets as priorities change.</p> <p>d. Identify actions that accelerate work flow process IAW internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p>e. Implement actions that accelerate work flow process IAW internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p>f. Enforce safety procedures.</p> <p>NOTE: Ensure all federal, state, and local provisions are adhered to when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-746-3527	Perform Maintenance Administration Duties	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Supervises packaging and preservation operations.</p> <p>h. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>2. Supply section receives repair parts.</p> <p> a. Verifies actual quantities received against receipt documents to ensure quantity shipped arrived at the section.</p> <p> b. Inspects items for damage.</p> <p> c. Forwards ROD to MMC and SSA.</p> <p> d. Separates items received due to incorrect routing for return to the supply system.</p> <p> e. Separates items received for stockage from those received for issue to MCS.</p> <p> f. Identifies stockage locations for replenishment items or bin locations for job order requests.</p> <p> g. Maintains documentation IAW the internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p> h. Employs safety procedures.</p> <p>3. Supply section stores repair parts.</p> <p> a. Checks item(s) received against due-outs to ensure correct item(s) are received.</p> <p> b. Places repair parts in correct storage location.</p> <p> c. Maintains documentation IAW the internal maintenance SOP.</p> <p> d. Safeguards repair from pilferage and environmental conditions.</p> <p> e. Performs location surveys and inventories as directed to verify accuracy of locator files.</p> <p> f. Employs safety procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Supply section issues repair parts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies location of requested item. b. Selects the correct item and quantity from the storage location. c. Notifies the MCS that the parts are available. d. Issues parts to MCS. e. Forwards reconciliation report to the MCS. f. Employs safety procedures. <p>5. Supply prepares parts for shipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Preserves repaired items for shipment. b. Crates repaired items for shipment. c. Seals repaired items for shipment. d. Labels repaired items for shipment. e. Disposes of hazardous materiel IAW TSOP and HAZMAT instructions. f. Employs safety procedures. <p>NOTE: Adhere to all federal, state, and local provisions when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-746-1514	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on LARC-LX	STP 55-88L1-SM STP 55-88L24-SM-TG
551-746-3527	Perform Maintenance Administration Duties	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG
551-746-4518	Perform Maintenance Management	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG
551-749-2528	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Service on Electrical Systems	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>g. Forwards bench stock request replenishment request to higher maintenance activity.</p> <p>h. Enforces safety procedures.</p> <p>*2. Section chief performs internal production control.</p> <p>a. Verifies maintenance request received from higher echelon of maintenance to ensure repair assets are on hand to complete repairs.</p> <p>b. Distributes workload to mechanics IAW higher echelon of maintenance priorities.</p> <p>c. Realigns personnel based on workload.</p> <p>d. Forwards status of equipment being repaired to the higher maintenance activity.</p> <p>3. Repair sections perform repairs on equipment.</p> <p>a. Perform repairs IAW appropriate technical publications.</p> <p>b. Request approval from the section chief to perform controlled exchange, when repair parts are not available in the system.</p> <p>c. Perform controlled exchange, when directed.</p> <p>d. Request bench stock replenishment.</p> <p>e. Employ safety procedures.</p> <p>NOTE: Adhere to all federal, state, and local provisions when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-746-3527	Perform Maintenance Administration Duties	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG
551-746-4518	Perform Maintenance Management	STP 55-88L24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Request ration support from port steward's office.</p> <p>e. Notify unit operations when vessel is prepared for sea.</p> <p>3. Crew prepares vessel for sea.</p> <p>a. Conducts PMCS and presail inspections.</p> <p>b. Secures all vessel equipment and hatches.</p> <p>c. Stores rations.</p> <p>d. Receives presail inspection and clearance to get vessel underway.</p> <p>NOTE: Adhere to all federal, state, and local provisions when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-733-4625	Perform Presail Inspections Aboard Vessel	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-736-2603	Perform Preoperations Check on LCM-8	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-746-1506	Perform Preoperational Checks	STP 55-88L1-SM

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>4. Inspector conducts inspection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Records in duplicate shortcomings found on DA Form 2404. b. Identifies any lower echelon maintenance required prior to repairs being performed. c. Identifies all bench stock needed to complete repairs. d. Annotates inspection on DA Form 3999-4. e. Forwards one copy of inspection findings to OIC or NCOIC. f. Forwards one copy of inspection to repair team. <p>5. Repair team conducts repairs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Fabricates repair part from bench stock, if necessary. b. Conducts confined space and hot work permit, if necessary. c. Prepares area needing repairs. d. Installs replacement items for items to be repaired. e. Annotates corrective action taken on team copy of DA Form 2404. f. Forwards copy of completed DA Form 2404 to section OIC or NCOIC upon completion of repairs. <p>NOTE: Adhere to all federal, state, and local provisions when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself from NBC Injury/Contamination with Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Anchors. h. Weighs anchor IAW vessel SOP when directed by higher echelon. i. Assists disabled vessel IAW vessel SOP. j. Docks vessel IAW with vessel SOP. k. Undocks vessel IAW with vessel SOP. NOTE: Adhere to all federal, state, and local provisions when handling, storing, or disposing of hazardous materials, substances, or waste.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1004	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1006	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination When Drinking From Your Canteen While Wearing Your Protective Mask	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1008	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination While Eliminating Body Waste When Wearing MOPP4	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1012	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M24 or M25-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological Hazard/Attack	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1025	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M40-Series Protective Mask with Hood	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-734-4601	Dock LCU	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-4602	Undock LCU	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-4605	Come Alongside Vessel With LCU	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-4606	Depart From Alongside Vessel With LCU	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG
551-734-4607	Assist Disabled Vessel	STP 55-88K14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Issues warning notice to the entire unit's subordinate elements using analog or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>f. Applies risk management processes as an integrated feature of task performance.</p> <p>2. Unit HQ coordinates for additional support requirements.</p> <p>a. Coordinates convoy marking equipment, vehicles, and other equipment requirements with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Coordinates tactical information and security requirements with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>c. Coordinates CHS requirements with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>3. Unit HQ prepares and briefs the stay-behind party plan.</p> <p>a. Coordinates stay-behind party requirements with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Identifies stay-behind party leader and composition based on higher HQ staff element requirements.</p> <p>c. Identifies all operational limitations and security requirements in coordination with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Designates assembly area location for stay-behind party that provides cover and concealment and does not interfere with departure of the main body from the area.</p> <p>e. Briefs stay-behind party leader on the commander's intent, operational and security requirements, communications, and site close-down procedures.</p> <p>f. Forwards location(s) of stay-behind facilities to higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*4. Commander and unit leaders prepare a displacement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculate unit's operational readiness level by using all vehicle, equipment, and personnel status reports. b. Coordinate repair of inoperable vehicles and equipment and repair time restrictions with the unit's or supporting maintenance element. c. List sequentially all tasks required to relocate the unit. d. List all equipment required to relocate the unit. e. Assign time limitations for the completion of each relocation task. f. Adjust load plans to accommodate current operational readiness levels. g. Designate personnel and equipment for advance/quartering and reconnaissance parties. h. Assign all relocation tasks to specific elements. i. Designate uniform, weapons, and equipment requirements for road march. j. Designate the march commander to control unit elements from SP to RP. k. Brief relocation plan to higher HQ staff element. l. Brief all unit personnel on relocation plan. m. Apply risk management processes as an integrated feature of task performance. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Commander and leaders formulate a tentative unit layout plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify general location of the unit CP. b. Identify area of all subelements, including tentative defensive boundaries. c. Develop traffic plan that identifies the traffic pattern and dismount point(s). d. Develop hasty security plan that identifies tentative guard posts and crew-served weapon positions. e. Develop communication plan depicting wire, analog, and/or digital communications diagrams for all subelements. f. Provide "runner" instructions until wire communications are operational. g. Coordinate tentative layout plan with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger. h. Brief advance/quartering party on details of layout plan with adjustment options. <p>*3. Commander and leaders plan advance/quartering party activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify required advance/quartering party tasks from the TSOP. b. Identify advance/quartering party vehicles and personnel constraints as established by higher HQ staff element. c. Identify time limitations for completion of advance/quartering party tasks. d. List essential advance/quartering party tasks. e. List equipment required to perform essential tasks within vehicle constraints. f. Brief advance/quartering party leader on area preparation tasks, available equipment, and possible options due to decreases in personnel or equipment failure. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Identify locations of preplanned indirect fire targets and target reference points in coordination with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>f. Identify locations of restrictive fire zones within or in the immediate vicinity of the unit's area of responsibility.</p> <p>*2. Commander and leaders prepare preliminary base fire plan.</p> <p>a. List available weapon systems and element to which they are assigned.</p> <p>b. Calculate each element's personnel assets based on the availability of personnel during normal operations.</p> <p>c. Designate subelement boundaries that cover the entire unit area of responsibility based on the normal availability of weapons and personnel.</p> <p>d. List probable engagement areas based on terrain analysis of the area of responsibility and data provided by higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>e. Establish coordination channels with adjacent units to integrate interlocking fires.</p> <p>f. List target areas for each type weapon system in the unit.</p> <p>g. List indirect fire and CAS target reference points.</p> <p>h. Coordinate fire support coordination measures with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>*3. Commander and leaders prepare preliminary mobility and countermobility plan.</p> <p>a. List locations of obstacles and types based on desired engagement areas, dead space, and preplanned indirect fire support using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Identify available obstacle assets and resources for emplacement.</p> <p>c. Coordinate additional obstacle requirements with higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*4. Commander and leaders prepare preliminary air defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify applicable air defense policies, procedures, and requirements in higher HQ and unit TSOP. b. List probable air avenues of approach. c. List current weapon control status as received from higher HQ staff element. d. Identify air defense warning signals. e. Designate locations for air watch positions. <p>*5. Commander prepares reaction force plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists base cluster reaction force requirements based on higher HQ TSOP or guidance. b. Lists internal reaction force requirements based on unit TSOP and personnel availability. c. Designates internal reaction force rally point. d. Lists subelements' tasking for external and internal reaction forces requirements. <p>*6. Commander prepares ground early-warning plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates location for employment of PEWS based on terrain analysis. b. Designates location(s) for deliberate OPs and LPs. <p>*7. Commander plans sector defense.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates boundaries of subelements based on unit plan. <p>NOTE: Boundaries should be consistent with deployed weapon systems and personnel available to man the perimeter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Designates crew-served automatic weapon positions with fields of fire that cover most likely dismounted avenues of approach and afford maximum cover and concealment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Designates anti-armor weapon positions, laterally and in depth that covers most likely mounted avenues of approach and afford maximum cover and concealment.</p> <p>d. Assigns sectors of fire to crew-served weapons where their fires overlap, integrate, and mutually support beyond the point of hand grenade range (35 meters).</p> <p>e. Assigns armor kill zones for anti-armor weapons within the element.</p> <p>f. Assigns grenade launcher positions to cover dead space areas.</p> <p>g. Designates individual weapon positions where fires overlap and provide flank security for automatic weapons.</p> <p>h. Identifies indirect fire and CAS target reference points within the platoon's sector.</p> <p>i. Identifies locations and types of obstacles within the platoon's sector.</p> <p>j. Identifies locations of restrictive fire zones within the platoon's sector.</p> <p>k. Coordinates integration of interlocking fires with adjacent elements on the left and right.</p> <p>*8. Section/squad leaders plan sector defense.</p> <p>a. Identify all primary positions within the section/squad's sector.</p> <p>b. Identify locations of obstacles, target reference points, and restrictive fire zones within the section/squad's defensive sector.</p> <p>c. Select alternate positions for each primary position that covers the same sector of fire as the primary position.</p> <p>d. Select individual alternate positions based on key weapon alternate positions.</p> <p>e. Select alternate positions that provide covered and concealed withdrawal routes.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Select supplementary positions that are within 200 meters of primary positions and are oriented in a different direction from primary positions.</p> <p>g. Designate sectors of fire for each supplementary position that interlock and provide mutual supporting fire.</p> <p>h. Coordinate integration of interlocking fires with adjacent elements using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Element leaders provide support to unit ADC plan.</p> <p> a. Identify element personnel and equipment to be used for ADC.</p> <p> b. Forward a list of required personnel and equipment to the unit HQ using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>3. Unit headquarters prepares ADC plan.</p> <p> a. Organizes light rescue, decontamination, and other teams with equipment as prescribed by the TSOP and OPORD.</p> <p> b. Identifies ADC priorities of all the CP facilities in coordination with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p> c. Identifies locations of alternate operational or alert sites in coordination with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p> d. Provides instructions on hardening support facilities.</p> <p> e. Forwards ADC plan to the higher HQ for approval using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p> f. Disseminates ADC plan to all subelements upon approval using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>f. Enforces station and net restrictions.</p> <p>g. Monitors the net to detect errors in operating procedures.</p> <p>h. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures.</p> <p>i. Enforces station listening silence as prescribed by OPORD or commander's directive.</p> <p>j. Lifts radio listening silence as prescribed by OPORD or commander's directive.</p> <p>k. Completes transition to extend range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required.</p> <p>l. Remotes radio station at least one kilometer, if required.</p> <p>m. Directs change to alternate frequency when compromise of primary frequency is suspected.</p> <p>n. Closes net IAW the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>2. Operators transmit and receive messages.</p> <p>a. Process messages by precedence, date/time group, and IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>b. Process incoming messages without errors.</p> <p>c. Forward incoming messages to appropriate element/section.</p> <p>d. Check outgoing messages for completeness and readability.</p> <p>e. Employ approved radiotelephone procedures.</p> <p>f. Transmit messages IAW precedence, correct format, and prescribed text.</p> <p>g. Employ approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information.</p> <p>h. Encode all grid coordinates using the current SOI/SSI.</p> <p>i. Decode all grid coordinates using the current SOI/SSI.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>j. Transmit radio messages for no longer than 20 seconds.</p> <p>k. Employ lowest operational power setting consistent with operations requirements.</p> <p>l. Maintain station log.</p> <p>m. Troubleshoot radio set as necessary and within operator's capability.</p> <p>n. Correct faults (within operator's capability).</p> <p>o. Report uncorrectable faults to higher HQ S6 for resolution.</p> <p>3. Unit operators maintain digital and/or analog communications.</p> <p>a. Maintain digital and/or analog communications between the unit CP and all sub-elements.</p> <p>b. Maintain digital and/or analog communications with higher HQ and all supported unit elements using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>c. Notify higher HQ S6 when digital and/or analog communications are partially or completely inoperative.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel maintain landline communications.</p> <p>a. Maintain wire communications between the unit CP and all subelements.</p> <p>b. Maintain a hot loop between the unit CP and sub-elements, if switchboard is not available.</p> <p>c. Establish messenger runners when land communications are inoperative.</p> <p>5. Radio operators implement FM remedial ECCM.</p> <p>a. Identify if source of interference is internal or external by disconnecting the radio antenna.</p> <p>b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Switch to high power on radio transmitter.</p> <p>d. Advise distant station to switch to high power.</p> <p>e. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.</p> <p>f. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.</p> <p>g. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to higher HQ communications branch.</p> <p>h. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications, such as relay (through another station), AM, or wire.</p> <p>i. Request (using alternate means) that the net change to a backup frequency.</p> <p>6. Radio operators implement AM remedial ECCM.</p> <p>a. Identify if source of interference is internal or external by disconnecting the radio antenna.</p> <p>b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.</p> <p>c. Check for intentional or unintentional interference.</p> <p>d. Check equipment grounding.</p> <p>e. Use radio frequency gain/frequency vernier in an attempt to work through the jamming.</p> <p>f. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.</p> <p>g. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.</p> <p>h. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to assigned or supporting higher HQ communications personnel or element.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications, such as relay (through another station), FM, or wire.</p> <p>j. Request (using alternate means) that the net change to a backup frequency.</p> <p>7. Unit headquarters maintains generator power.</p> <p>a. Operates generators IAW appropriate TMs.</p> <p>b. Constructs sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signature.</p> <p>c. Constructs a fuel storage and fire control point for all generators with fire extinguishers as prescribed by the TSOP and commander's guidance.</p> <p>8. Unit personnel employ SIGSEC measures.</p> <p>a. Employ COMSEC measures to deny friendly telecommunication information to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Employ ELSEC measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communication devices, from threat detection.</p> <p>c. Evaluate TEMPEST controls to identify emanation vulnerabilities and implement countermeasures.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE (63-OPFOR-1012)

CONDITION: OPFOR employs a large number of radio detection finding sets, along with ground and airborne communications analysts, to monitor enemy forces for loose communications security practices.

STANDARD: 1. Locate the positions of enemy command, intelligence, and logistics radio nets. 2. Forward locations to OPFOR HQ. 3. Use jamming signals against enemy radio receivers. 4. Monitor enemy radio nets for intelligence information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>2. Advance/quartering party establishes wire communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies locations of all subordinate platoons/sections. b. Plans wire and telephone installation. c. Prepares a telephone traffic diagram. d. Installs telephone switchboard. e. Lays wire for communications between switchboard and other platoons/sections. f. Establishes wire communications between HQ and switchboard. <p>3. Unit HQ supervises unit analog and/or digital communication nets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Functions as unit net control station. b. Manages communications security for the unit. c. Establishes alternate means of communications to include analog and/or digital communications and messenger with higher, lower and adjacent units. d. Ensures unit personnel practice COMSEC/ELSEC procedures. <p>4. Platoon headquarters supervises platoon analog and/or digital communication nets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Functions as platoon net control station. b. Manages communications security for the platoon. c. Establishes alternate means of communications to include analog and/or digital communications and messenger with higher, lower and supported units. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (63-OPFOR-1005)

CONDITION: OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular and/or irregular elements, in the enemy rear area along MSR and near support sites.

STANDARD: 1. Set up well-concealed location(s). 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semi-automatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected target. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being spotted. 6. Report all specified PIR and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

CONDITION: Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

STANDARD: 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>*2. Commander directs deployment planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs mobilization officer to update MOBPLAN (RC) based on current mission guidance. b. Directs UMO to update the unit movement plan based on current mission guidance. c. Verifies UMO and alternate UMO are on orders and trained. d. Directs unit leaders to update unit RSOP. e. Directs unit leaders to update unit battle book, to include the unit missions, organization, locations of mobilization station and ports, and extracts from the applicable OPLANs. f. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ. g. Identifies deployment training requirements. h. Validates MOBPLAN (RC). <p>*3. Mobilization officer updates MOBPLAN (RC).</p> <p>NOTE: MOBPLAN is updated annually or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Revalidates support agreements. b. Updates annexes. c. Validates unit retrieval plan. <p>*4. UMO updates unit movement plan.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit movement plan is updated annually or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies the administrative, logistics and coordinating requirements for the plan. b. Verifies load plans are current and entered into the AUEL. c. Updates DEL(s) based on current mission(s). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Updates air load plan based on current mission(s).</p> <p>e. Prepares movement binders with key data, to include checklists, the current copy of the AUEL, the DEL, and strip maps.</p> <p>f. Identifies hazardous and sensitive/classified cargo and handling procedures.</p> <p>g. Identifies BBPCT material requirements.</p> <p>h. Coordinates ground movement plan to designated ports with supporting ITO and local authorities, if required.</p> <p>i. Verifies personnel identified for deployment equipment teams, super cargoes and advance parties are deployable.</p> <p>j. Coordinates tactical information and security requirements with the S2/S3.</p> <p>*5. Commander reviews unit readiness status.</p> <p>a. Validates requisitions for all equipment shortages.</p> <p>b. Directs unit supply to conduct an inventory of UBL items.</p> <p>c. Identifies unit training status for deployment mission, to include individual/crew served weapons, NBC, driver certification, special equipment, rail teams, air load/pallet build team, BBPCT team, and HAZMAT handlers.</p> <p>d. Directs unit HQ to coordinate unit SRP with S1 or supporting installation, as appropriate.</p> <p>e. Directs unit to maintain mobilization packet for each soldier IAW directives (RC).</p> <p>f. Directs personnel section to screen members not available for deployment.</p> <p>g. Resolves nondeployable personnel issues.</p> <p>h. Maintains unit liaison with mobilization station.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>i. Directs maintenance section to identify maintenance affecting readiness.</p> <p>j. Initiates action to resolve unit maintenance problems affecting readiness.</p> <p>k. Directs unit safety officer to prepare risk assessment of the deployment operation.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders prepare for mobilization.</p> <p>a. Update section portions of the RSOP and TSOP.</p> <p>b. Update section portions of the unit battle book, to include the unit mission, organization, locations of mobilization station and ports and extracts from the applicable OPLANs.</p> <p>c. Provide input to commander for update of unit METL.</p> <p>7. Unit HQ plans for deployment.</p> <p>a. Identifies rear detachment requirements.</p> <p>b. Plans for property transfer, turnover and control procedures.</p> <p>c. Verifies family support group program has been established and key personnel are available.</p> <p>d. Prepares plan for storing personnel property and POVs.</p> <p>e. Coordinates accreditation of automated information systems (RC).</p> <p>f. Identifies key personnel to be ordered to duty in advance of the unit (RC).</p> <p>g. Coordinates with S1 for all unit personnel to go through SRP.</p> <p>h. Maintains a mobilization packet for each soldier IAW directives (RC).</p> <p>i. Coordinates update of RSOP and TSOP by section.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Prepares communications plan. k. Identifies force protection measures. l. Prepares risk assessment of the deployment operation. 8. Unit conducts deployment training. a. Conducts load-out test as directed. b. Trains load teams, such as rail-loading teams, packing and crating teams, blocking and bracing teams, aerial/sea port load teams in specific team operations. c. Conducts mobilization status briefing for all unit personnel (RC). d. Conducts test of alert notification plan. e. Conducts HAZMAT training as needed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Identifies unit training status for deployment mission, to include for individual/crew served weapons, NBC, driver certification, special equipment, rail teams, air load/pallet build team, BBPCT team, AAPS, HAZMAT certified personnel, and other automated systems operators.</p> <p>e. Directs unit HQ to coordinate unit SRP with S1 or with supporting installation, as appropriate.</p> <p>f. Directs maintenance section to identify maintenance issues affecting readiness.</p> <p>g. Initiates action to resolve unit maintenance problems affecting readiness.</p> <p>h. Directs unit HQ to review personnel status.</p> <p>i. Initiates action to resolve nondeployable personnel issues.</p> <p>*3. Commander directs deployment planning.</p> <p>a. Directs UMO to update movement plan based on current mission guidance.</p> <p>b. Directs unit leaders to update battle book, to include the unit mission, organization and extracts from the applicable OPLANs.</p> <p>c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>d. Directs unit safety officer to prepare risk assessment of the deployment operation.</p> <p>e. Identifies deployment training requirements.</p> <p>*4. UMO updates unit movement plan.</p> <p>a. Identifies the administrative, logistics and coordinating requirements for the plan based on the current mission.</p> <p>b. Verifies load plans are current and entered into the AUDEL.</p> <p>c. Updates DEL based on current mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Updates air load plan based on current mission.</p> <p>e. Updates movement binders with current mission data.</p> <p>f. Identifies hazardous and sensitive cargo to be deployed.</p> <p>g. Verifies hazardous and sensitive/classified cargo handling procedures with installation unit movement coordinator.</p> <p>h. Updates BBPCT materiel requirements.</p> <p>i. Verifies ground movement plan to designated ports is current.</p> <p>NOTE: Performance measure "i" does not apply to the IBCT.</p> <p>j. Verifies personnel listed for deployment equipment teams, supercargoes and advance parties are deployable.</p> <p>NOTE: "Supercargoes" in performance measure does not apply to IBCT.</p> <p>k. Coordinates tactical information and security requirements with the S2/S3 using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>5. Unit HQ plans for deployment.</p> <p>a. Identifies rear detachment requirements based on current mission.</p> <p>b. Identifies advance party personnel requirements.</p> <p>c. Plans for property transfer, turnover and control procedures.</p> <p>d. Verifies that key family support group program personnel are available.</p> <p>e. Verifies unit deployment team personnel are available.</p> <p>f. Requests commander assign additional and/or replacement personnel for deployment teams and advance party.</p> <p>g. Prepares plan for storing personal property and POVs.</p> <p>h. Prepares communications plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Identifies force protection measures for each step of the deployment process. j. Identifies required reports to higher HQ during deployment process. k. Identifies rules of engagement for gaining theater. l. Performs risk assessment of deployment operation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>c. Identifies training status of individual/crew-served weapons, NBC, driver certification, special equipment, rail teams, air load/pallet build team, BBPCT team, automated air-land planning system, HAZMAT certified personnel, and other automated system operators.</p> <p>d. Identifies unit maintenance problems.</p> <p>e. Directs unit HQ to review personnel status.</p> <p>f. Requests support to correct readiness deficiencies.</p> <p>*3. Commander directs redeployment planning.</p> <p>a. Directs UMO to update redeployment movement plan based on current mission guidance and timeline from higher HQ.</p> <p>b. Directs unit leaders to update battle book, to include the unit mission, organization, redeployment ports information and extracts from the applicable OPLANs.</p> <p>c. Directs Unit Safety Officer to prepare a risk assessment of the deployment operation.</p> <p>d. Issues redeployment OPORD.</p> <p>*4. UMO updates redeployment movement plan.</p> <p>a. Updates the administrative, logistics, and coordinating requirements for the plan based on current mission.</p> <p>b. Updates redeployment movement plan based on current mission guidance.</p> <p>c. Verifies load plans are current and entered into the AUDEL.</p> <p>d. Updates DEL based on current missions.</p> <p>e. Updates movement binders with mission specific information.</p> <p>f. Identifies hazardous and sensitive/classified handling procedures for each mode of transport and each port.</p> <p>g. Updates BBPCT materiel requirements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
<p>h. Verifies status of personnel listed for redeployment equipment teams, supercargoes, and advance parties.</p> <p>i. Coordinates tactical information and security requirements with the support operations section using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>5. Unit HQ plans for redeployment.</p> <p>a. Plans steps to meet redeployment validation criteria.</p> <p>b. Identifies force protection measures in the AAs and MAs.</p> <p>c. Incorporates redeployment family reunion requirements into planning timeline.</p> <p>d. Plans media contact for return to home station.</p> <p>e. Initiates planning for welcome home ceremony.</p> <p>f. Identifies requirements and plan for stress control briefings.</p> <p>g. Provides rear detachment with information on redeployment for dissemination to families.</p> <p>h. Performs risk assessment on redeployment operations.</p> <p>i. Coordinates security of sensitive items.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATION

6-1. GENERAL. An external evaluation is designed to provide the commander and his staff with an evaluation of the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Feedback from an external evaluation is also used as a key input for the planning and development of future unit training activities. The unit's METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs of this ARTEP MTP (Chapter 5), provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation. An external evaluation is usually planned, administered, and evaluated by the unit. The frequency of such evaluations will be prescribed at the discretion of the unit's chain of command.

6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION. A successful evaluation depends on proper preparation, including planning, coordination, and where applicable, a rehearsal or OC talk-through of the major exercise events. The written evaluation plan must contain the pertinent evaluation details.

a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. The sample evaluation scenario for the floating craft maintenance company is provided in Table 6-1.

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
1	Administrative preparation	Before start time

Part 1

Deploy Company Level Unit		
1	Receive and verify warning order	20 min
2	Initiate recall plan	30 min
3	Perform administrative and soldier readiness processing activities	3 hr
4	Inspect unit's vehicles and equipment	3 hr
5	Load vehicles and equipment	3 hr
6	AAR	1 hr
7	Receive movement order	30 min
8	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
9	Arrive at APOE/SPOE	10 min
10	Perform embarkation activities	2 hr
11	Arrive at APOD/SPOD	30 min
12	Perform debarkation activities	2 hr
13	Perform staging and marshaling activities	2 hr
14	Conduct theater reception operations	2 hr
15	Coordinate theater integration activities	2 hr

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
----------	--------	--------------------------

Part 2

Relocate Company Level Unit		
1	AAR	1 hr
2	Receive and verify warning order	10 min
3	Conduct route reconnaissance	2 hr
4	Provide input to S2/S3	20 min
5	Plan unit move	30 min
6	Plan occupation of site	30 min
7	Prepare vehicles and equipment	2 hr
8	Organize march elements	2 hr
9	Organize advance/quartering party	15 min
10	Receive movement order	30 min
11	Brief advance/quartering party	5 min
12	Dispatch advance/quartering party	10 min
13	Cross SP	5 min
14	Conduct tactical convoy operations to relocate to new operating site	2 hr
15	Cross RP	5 min
16	AAR	30 min
17	Brief march elements	10 min
18	Dispatch march elements	30 min
19	Cross SP	10 min
20	Conduct tactical convoy operations to relocate to new operating site	2 hr
21	Cross contaminated area	45 min
22	Threat interdiction	40 min
23	Continues convoy	45 min
24	Cross RP	30 min
25	AAR	1 hr

Part 3

Establish Company Level Area		
1	Perform advance/quartering party activities	4 hrs
2	Establish unit area of operations	6 hrs
3	Organize unit defense	2 hrs
4	AAR	1 hr

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
----------	--------	-----------------------

Part 4

Transport Personnel, Cargo, and Equipment		
1	Provide DS and GS maintenance	24 hr
2	AAR	1 hr

Part 5

Defend Assigned Area		
1	Defend unit area	15 min
2	Receive alert message	1 hr
3	Occupy fighting positions	1 hr
4	Increase perimeter manning	10 min
5	Assemble reaction force	10 min
6	React to Level I threat	45 min
7	Respond to NBC attack	45 min
8	Perform decontamination and monitoring operations	40 min
9	Receive notification of Level II/III ground attack	45 min
10	Increase defense preparation	10 min
11	Defend against OPFOR attack	30 min
12	Detect threat	4 hr
13	Engage threat	2 hr
14	Request indirect fire or close air support	30 min
15	Disengage threat	30 min
16	Conduct hasty displacement	30 min
17	Handover battle to tactical combat force/MP	10 min
18	Reorganize unit	15 min
19	Conduct ADC	20 min
20	Treat casualties	30 min
21	Evacuate casualties	30 min
22	Perform mortuary affairs operations	1 hr
23	Reconstitute unit	1 hr
24	AAR	2 hr

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
----------	--------	-----------------------

Part 6

Redeploy Company Level Unit		
1	Receive and verify warning order for redeployment	10 min
2	Perform administrative and SRP activities	30 min
3	Dismantle current operating site	1 hr
4	Inspect vehicles and equipment	10 min
5	Load vehicles and equipment	20 min
6	AAR	20 min
7	Receive movement order	1 hr
8	Conduct nontactical road march	20 min
9	Arrive APOE/SPOE	1 hr
10	Perform staging activities	2 hr
11	Perform embarkation activities	1 hr
12	AAR	1 hr
13	Arrive APOD/SPOD	2 hr
14	Perform debarkation activities	2 hr
15	Perform staging activities	1 hr
16	Receive movement order	20 min
17	Conduct nontactical road march	1 hr
18	Arrive home station	2 hr
19	Conduct home station activities	2 hr
20	Final AAR	3 hr

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element using Table 2-1. Record the selected missions in the UPW, Figure 6-1.

Unit: _____						Date: _____
No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section	Section	Section	Section	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
*If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form						

Figure 6-1. Example unit proficiency worksheet

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Resource requirements and planning considerations are identified as the evaluation is expanded and developed. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. The evaluating unit will prepare their own consolidated support requirements. The evaluating HQ will have to prepare its own consolidated support list.

c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. For this evaluation an area of _____ meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation because it greatly influences the outcome of the battle. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. This method may be difficult to support due to the amount of required resources.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. SELECTING THE EVALUATORS. OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. Senior OC should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position. The following are minimum rank and experience for OCs:

- a. OC will be an officer with command or staff experience.
- b. Section OC Chief will be of equal or greater rank than the section's OIC or, as applicable; the senior OC NCO will be of equal or greater rank than the section's senior NCOIC.
- c. Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

6-4. TRAINING THE EVALUATORS. OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas.

a. Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. OCs must thoroughly understand and correctly implement the evaluation.

b. MILES. Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functioning before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

- (1) Rules of engagement.
- (2) OC duties and responsibilities.
- (3) Communication system.
- (4) Evaluation data collection plan.

6-5. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION. The evaluating HQ develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-3) documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet (Figure 6-4, page 6-10) documents weather information that helps observe missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-5, page 6-11) documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR. The senior OC has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his own finding and his subordinate OCs input. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and the task summary sheets), to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the UPW.

6-6. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the condition under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent who realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapon, and skill.

a. Selection. Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

- (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
- (2) Rules of engagement.

- (3) Threat small unit tactics
- (4) Training scenarios.
- (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Safety.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION _____						
DATE: _____						
2. UNIT LEADERS: (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
CDR	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
XO	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
S1	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
S2/S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
S4	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
CO CDR	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
3. UNIT STRENGTH (excluding leaders): _____						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (major items):						

5. COMMENTS:						

EVALUATOR SIGNATURE:						

Figure 6-3. Unit data sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET						
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:						
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:						
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:						
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Hazy	Raining	Snowing	Fog	
Other:						
Temperature						
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Day	Night					
Moon Phase	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	Full		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:						
4. TERRAIN (Circle appropriate description)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountainous	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Arctic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
5. REMARKS:						

Figure 6-4. Environmental data sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title Or Task Number	Date/Time Of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

Figure 6-5. Personnel and equipment loss report

c. OPFOR Strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three to one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-7. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION. An evaluation is divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a. Pre-evaluation.

(1) The senior OC and all other OCs must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STX's contained in Chapter 4.

(3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions, as required.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The OCs should make equipment functions check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior OC for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observes. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other OCs do not speak to, aid, advice, and point out positions or in any way to influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue of emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior OC issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the event and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begins with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior OC terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reason for the termination in the margin of the OCs Task Summary Sheets and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, the completion of each event or action is indicated by “conducting sustain operations.” During this period, the senior OC will direct the unit to remain in position while “replacements” (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, the OC must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment and record “kill” codes and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior OC directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) The OCs should follow these guidelines.

(a) Report major “kills” (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firing and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. OCs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit’s location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit’s location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission.

c. Post Evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions.

- (1) The unit OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.
- (2) The unit OC must complete the task summary sheets.
- (3) The unit OC must turn in all completed OC packets (with the OC scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.
- (4) The unit OC must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.
- (5) Each element OC should conduct an AAR of his elements performance.

6-8. PREPARING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member, which becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action. Preparing the AAR involves five steps:

a. Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OC should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

b. Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. The OC does not need to remain close to the unit leader, since more can be seen from higher ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Since unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the OC must be present when the commander issues the order. The OC should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events include.

- (1) Conducting a road march.
- (2) Crossing a radiological contaminated area.
- (3) Performing unit supply operations.
- (4) Responding to an NBC attack.

c. Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually, the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

d. Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's event in the order in which they occurred.

e. Review the events. After the senior OC has an understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events, which are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects the events that can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

6-9. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW. Conducting the AAR requires the following five steps.

a. Organize the participants. When the OC and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's OC is with the element for which he is responsible.

b. State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

c. Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should:

- (1) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- (2) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- (3) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- (4) Suggest the players discuss not only what happen, but also how it happened and how it could be done better.
- (5) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.
- (6) Relate events to subsequent results.
- (7) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(8) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and how to show routes, phase line, and objectives.

(9) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

d. Review the sequence. The AAR leader reviews the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(1) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(2) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(3) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(4) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified and what was done to overcome it?

(5) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

e. Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader does the following.

(1) Maintain order and discipline.

(2) Reviews the training objectives.

(3) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detail examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(4) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(5) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(6) Involves participants in the discussion.

(7) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.

(8) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models.

Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A

COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

A-1. PURPOSE. This appendix provides, as part of the CATS, the Combined Arms Command's recommended strategy for training a company/detachment. This appendix has three parts. The first part describes CATS and explains how CATS fits into the training planning process as described in FM 25-101. The second part explains how to read the strategies and the third part explains how to integrate CATS into the long-range and near-term planning process.

Section I. CATS AND THE TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS

A-2. TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS. FM 25-101 describes a three-step process, based on the unit METL and ending in training execution. Figure A-1 is a graphic representation of the process.

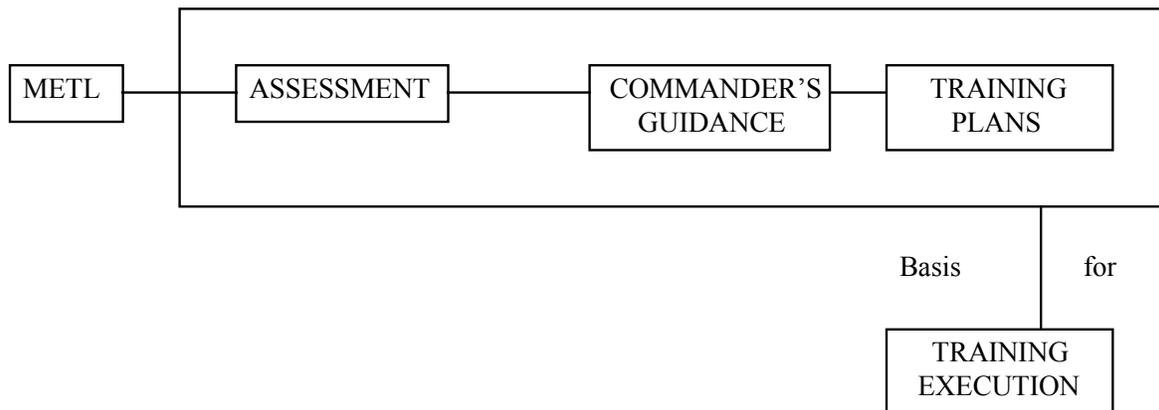


Figure A-1. Training planning process

CATS does not replace this process. It is a training tool that enhances the commander's ability to use the training planning process to manage his training and to optimize the use of scarce training resources. CATS unit strategies describe recommended training events and the event frequency. Your unit may train all or some of these events. Your training frequency may or may not match that in the CATS strategy. Whatever a unit's training requirements, CATS provides a framework for use in making decisions on the training to be conducted. The training strategy outlined in CATS is designed to help commanders at all levels develop and execute a more efficient training program. Any given strategy addresses all units Army-wide of the same TOE. The specific makeup of the unit's training program is dependent upon--its METL; guidance from higher headquarters; and the resources available at the installation or training environment. It is descriptive in nature and to be used as a guide for the commander.

A-3. CATS. CATS is the Army's training strategy that integrates combined arms training for--heavy, light, and special operations forces, the active and reserve components, in the unit and institution environments. It provides an azimuth to guide Army training and identifies the resources required to support that training. It enables the Army to identify, manage and program the acquisition of training resources. CATS evolved from the need for more efficient training, based on expected resource constraints. At US Army level, CATS gives the rationale for acquiring training resources through the development of unit and institutional training strategies. The strategies provide recommended training frequencies and identify the training resources needed to support the strategy.

A-4. TERMS. The information in this paragraph explains the terms listed in Figure 1-1. For information on the training planning process, see FM 25-101.

- a. The METL is an unconstrained, unprioritized statement of the tasks required to complete the wartime mission. It is the source of training planning activities.
- b. Assessment is the beginning of the training planning process. It is the commander's evaluation of the unit's training level on the METL.
- c. Commander's Guidance consists of long-range planning calendars and CTG issued to the battalion from the division. It serves to focus the training efforts of the battalion in accordance with the division commander's priorities. The battalion in turn issues CTG for its subordinate companies.
- d. Training Plans are a collection of schedules and other supporting documents that carry out the commander's guidance.
- e. Training Execution is the actual performance of the training scheduled in the training plans portion of the training planning process.

A-5. APPLYING CATS. The information in this paragraph explains how to apply CATS to the training planning process. Figure A-2 is a graphic representation of the process.

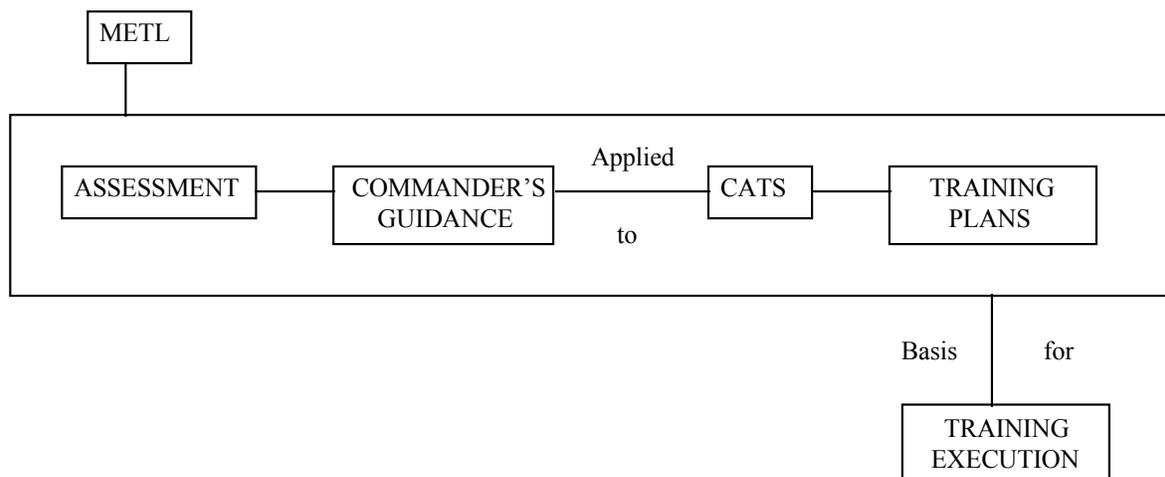


Figure A-2. Training planning process

a. The commander determines the exact events and tasks to be trained based on his METL and guidance from higher headquarters.

(1) The unit trains tasks during events established in FM 25-100, FM 25-101, and CATS.

(2) The company/detachment trains its METL by training soldiers, squads, sections and platoons in their wartime tasks. The company/detachment applies CATS to its training plans by applying the training events, frequencies and critical gates contained in strategies to the CTG in developing its training plans. The company commander and training officer/NCO uses the critical gates identified in the strategies to ensure that basic tasks are trained prior to moving on to training more complex or resource intensive tasks. The performance of training gate tasks are always evaluated by the commander and serve as the basis of additional training efforts. For example, a TEWT should be used to train METL tasks prior to conducting a complex and resource intensive event like a CFX. The collective training tasks trained in the TEWT are evaluated by the commander and serve as the basis for additional squad/section/platoon training or another TEWT prior to the execution of a CFX.

(3) TADSS based training uses a mix of TADSS and live fire/field training. The strategies show those TADSS within the Army's system or year projected for fielding. The TADSS may not be available at your installation or training environment.

b. The strategies can be viewed as training plans for generic type units. The strategy for the company/detachment is based on the TOE for the Motor Transport/Terminal/Watercraft /Movements Control company/detachment. It does not address environmental factors that apply to specific companies (such as MTOE, mission, particular training weaknesses and strengths, or the group/battalion commander's guidance).

c. By inserting an extra step into the training planning process, commanders apply the components of their unit CATS strategies to their particular training programs and environments. Commanders evaluate and apply the information contained in the strategies to their training environments. The optimal frequencies identified in the strategies may have to be adjusted based upon a unit's training status or its resourcing.

Section II. STRATEGY ORGANIZATION AND INTERPRETATION

A-6. UNIT TRAINING STRATEGIES. This paragraph explains the strategy organization and explains how to use it. The unit training portion of CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and resources recommended to train to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained at a particular unit will be based on the unit's METL. The unit strategy in this appendix covers all transportation companys/units. The unit training strategies have three major components--Maneuver, Gunnery, and Soldier.

a. The Maneuver strategy is descriptive. It provides recommended training frequencies for collective training events in a unit. The events come from FM 25-100, 25-101 or the glossary of this MTP. It helps a unit maintain MTP standards and depicts the resources required to support training events.

b. The Gunnery Component has Individual/crew served weapons strategies that the Infantry school developed. These strategies also can be found in DA Pamphlet 350-38 and DA Pamphlet 350-39 or appropriate weapons FMs.

c. The Soldier Component is a descriptive strategy for training individual soldier skills. It lists the resources required to support soldier training and links with and supports a collective training strategy.

A-7. ELEMENTS OF THE UNIT STRATEGIES. The unit training strategies are in matrix formats. The matrix lists the unit size levels, training events or training exercises, training event frequencies for both the active and reserve components, critical gates, and training resources.

a. Training levels are units, training elements or echelons (such as individual through corps) that execute specific training events.

b. Training events are types of collective training exercises identified in FM 25-101 or the glossary of this MTP. Training events identify the recommended exercises that units should conduct to train to MTP standard. Units normally conduct events in a progressive and sequential manner. For example; a TEWT should be conducted before conducting a CFX. A CPX should be conducted before conducting a FTX.

c. Training event frequencies are the suggested number of times that an event should be trained during a training cycle to attain or maintain MTP standards. AC units use an annual cycle and RC units conduct training on a 4-year cycle.

d. A critical gate is a training event that must be done and evaluated before moving onto a more complex, resource intensive, or hazardous event. MACOM or field commanders may direct performance of critical gate training tasks to an established standard prior to performing more complex or resource intensive tasks.

e. The unit training strategies identify the resources that will be used to support each training event. These resources are:

- OPTEMPO
- Ammunition
- TADSS
- Training Land
- Training Ranges

The resources listed in the strategies represent those that are available now.

(1) OPTEMPO figures reflect the annual operating miles/hours required for the base vehicle or system for a particular unit, per event. The OPTEMPO figures come from the BLTM manual. When no BLTM was available, an estimated OPTEMPO required to support all the annual iterations of that training event were developed by the proponents.

(2) Ammunition figures reflect the ammunition required to support training events and come from DA Pamphlet 350-38, Standards in Weapons Training. The maneuver/collective strategies reflect blank ammunition requirements. Live ammunition appears on the Gunnery strategies. Pyrotechnics appear on the maneuver/collective component.

(3) TADSS are training aids, devices, simulators and simulations that support specific training events. TADSS listed are those in the system and non-system TADSS that are fielded. In this strategy, Battalion and BBS is identified as a primary TADSS to support battalion staff and headquarters company/detachment's CPX training.

(4) Training Land is a resource category that will list the recommended training land in kilometers by event to conduct maneuver training. The reference is TC 25-1. The actual amount of training land needed by a particular unit will be determined by METT-T and the characteristics or condition of the training land available to the unit.

(5) Training Range is a resource requirement that supports weapons training events. The information comes from TC 25-8.

A-8. GUIDE TO THE UNIT STRATEGIES. This paragraph provides a guide to reading the collective, gunnery, and soldier components.

a. We will use the Battalion Staff and Headquarters company/detachment as our example (Figure A-1).

(1) The top of the maneuver strategy lists the major training events. The order in which the events appear, from left to right, is not prescriptive. The events do follow a logical progression of how a unit might process through an annual training cycle. Explanations of these events are in FM 25-101 or the glossary of this MTP.

(2) On the left side of the maneuver strategy is the column titled levels. This column lists the units covered by the strategy. The strategy in this appendix addresses the Battalion Staff and Headquarters Company/detachment and the Battalion HHC. There is a separate row for AC and RC units. Each column depicts the recommended frequency that a unit should conduct a specific training event within a year. For example, look at the training event, STAFFEX. Here, the recommended frequency for an AC, battalion staff to conduct a STAFFEX is 12 times a year.

b. The M16 A1/A2 matrix will be used for the gunnery/weapon strategy example.

NOTE: Gunnery/weapon strategies in the MTP cover only branch specific weapon systems. Some units, like the battalion staff, will not have specific gunnery/weapon strategies.

(1) Gunnery/weapon strategies were developed by TRADOC schools that the STRAC manual identifies as the weapon's proponent. Because the Infantry branch is the proponent for the M16, the Infantry school developed this strategy and it applies to all branches.

(2) Training events are in the top position of the gunnery/weapon strategy. The levels or echelons that will train these tasks are on the left. On the M16 strategy, qualification for the M16 is conducted at the soldier level. The critical gates to be completed, before M16 qualification, are in FM 23-9. The unit commander will ensure that the soldier trains those requirements before moving on to qualification.

(3) Frequency depicts how often the tasks listed in the upper part of the strategy should be conducted annually. Per guidance provided in the STRAC manual, the frequency block for the M16 has two categories. Category I applies to soldiers with either an 11B or an 11M MOS assigned to an infantry rifle squad or a 19D or 11B assigned to a scout squad or long-range surveillance detachment. Category II applies to all combat arms, combat support and combat service support soldiers not assigned to rifle or infantry squads.

(4) These two categories are subdivided by TRC IAW the STRAC manual. They are: TRC A = AC Units, TRC L = Light Infantry, Air Assault and Airborne Units, TRC S = Special Reaction Teams (AC, MP Teams), TRC C = RC Units, TRC D = USAR Training Division, Reception Stations and Separate Training Brigades, and NGB Training Cadre.

(5) Training categories and training readiness conditions provide an all encompassing set of training frequencies. The M16 strategy recommends that a light infantry squad conduct three live fire exercises per year. The reserve component squads have no recommended frequency.

(6) OPTEMPO is not identified for M16 training.

(7) Figures for ammunition are per DA Pamphlet 350-38 (STRAC). Qualification with the M16 requires 160 rounds of ball and 20 rounds of tracer ammunition per weapon per year.

c. The final component is the soldier strategy.

(1) The soldier strategy focuses on training common skills in a particular CMF or can be focused on a single MOS.

(2) Training events selected for the 88- are across the top of the strategy. The left column shows the recommended annual event frequency. The letter "A" represents AC soldiers. The letter "R" represents RC soldiers. Thus, in this example, the recommendation is for daily physical training for the active component 88- and monthly for the reserve component soldier.

Section III. INTEGRATION OF CATS IN THE PLANNING PROCESS

A-9. INTEGRATING CATS. This portion of the appendix explains how to integrate CATS into the planning process. It focuses on long range planning that conducted at brigade and above. To understand how CATS fits into this process, a brief summary of Chapter 3 (Planning) from FM 25-101 has been provided.

A-10. THE PLANNING PROCESS.

a. Long Range Planning.

(1) Assessment. Assessments is the start of the long range planning process. Using their evaluations, the input of subordinate leaders and the results of training evaluations, commanders assess their unit's training level on METL tasks. The assessment serves as the basis for the commander's training strategy for sustainment and improvement training. Commanders at all levels do this assessment function. An integral part of the assessment is the identification of required training resources and shortfalls. The commander also must synchronize the actions of supporting units and agencies to ensure proper training execution.

(2) In creating their training strategy, commanders ensure that training:

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

The strategy that meets these requirements results in the commander's training guidance.

(3) Senior commanders (brigade and above) provide subordinate commanders with long range training calendars, the commander's training guidance, resources to train and protection from training distorters. Commanders often provide recommended training events frequency.

b. Short-range Planning. The guidance that results from the long-range planning process is refined by the short-range planning process. Subordinate commanders use this guidance to create their training calendars. Guidance on the short-range training process can be found in the CATS appendix in the unit's MTP.

A-11. CATS AND THE PLANNING PROCESS. CATS serves the company commander as a training management and training resource identification tool. As a training management tool, it allows the company commander to more efficiently manage his training program, with limited resource availability. As a training resource identification tool, it identifies the resources within the Army's inventory to conduct training. The availability of those resources will vary, depending on your location.

a. Long-range Planning.

(1) Assessment.

(2) The CATS strategy--

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

(3) CATS provides a convenient vehicle for the transmission of the commander's training guidance. It serves as the basis for the long range calendar. It provides subordinate commanders with recommended frequencies of training events.

(4) EXECUTION. The following example shows how CATS could fit into the long-range training process.

b. The Company/Detachment Maneuver Training Strategy lists the recommended frequencies for required annual training events. In particular, for the STX it lists 10 iterations. The optimal training frequency is for the company/detachment staff to train this event 10 times in a given year, 1 STX per month for 10 months. The frequencies listed in CATS would be trained as follows: 2 events per year--semiannual training; 4 events per year--quarterly training; 6 events per year--bimonthly training.

c. Naturally, the training year may not support such a neat breakdown of training events. CATS gives you the flexibility to adjust the events to meet your particular requirements. A key point here is the idea of critical gates. As you can see, STX is a critical gate for FTX. You should conduct any event that is a critical gate, before conducting the more complex task. Gates serve to ensure that basic tasks essential to the successful performance of complex tasks are trained and evaluated prior to the performance of complex tasks. Critical gates may also serve as a type of preview or "rehearsal" for a follow-on training event.

d. Assume that your commander has identified platoon leadership as a particular weakness in your unit. Your commander decides that he wants to run platoon STX exercises twice a month to train the platoon/section/crew/squad leadership elements.

e. Using this guidance you simply go the company strategy and substitute 24 for 12. If the frequencies for the other events are acceptable, you now have a completed commander's strategy. In this manner a CATS base strategy is tailored to meet a commander's assessment and training needs.

f. Short-range Planning. The application of CATS Battalion Staff and Headquarters Company/Detachment's unit training strategies to battalion short range planning and the battalion quarterly training calendar is seen as follows.

Recommended Company/Detachment
Calendar Using CATS Maneuver Strategy.

1ST MONTH

WEEK 1	Drill Training (1)
WEEK 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 4	STX (2)

NOTES:

1. The collective tasks trained during the weekly Cell/Staff/Section training periods support company METL tasks and are trained according to the commander's assessment and his priorities for staff training outlined in the CTG. Soldier training tasks trained during this month are soldier/leader supporting performance of the collective tasks to be trained during the weekly staff training sessions or the monthly STX.

2. Performance of the STX substitutes for Cell/Staff/Section Training in week four (4).

2ND MONTH

WEEK 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 3	TOCEX (2)
WEEK 4	Cell/Staff/Section Training (3)

NOTES:

1. Training during these weekly periods concentrates on staff METL tasks identified as priority in the CTG. Training time here could also be spent training tasks evaluated as NO GO during the 1st month's training period. Training exercises such as a LCXs or MCX can be used to drive training during these periods. LCXs and MCXs can also be used to enhance staff coordination.

2. Performance of the TOCEX substitutes for performance of the monthly STAFFEX that would be conducted here. Commanders may have to modify or extend the training period of the TOCEX to include training tasks that would have been normally performed in the STAFFEX.

3. Tasks trained here can be tasks rated as NO GO during the previous week's TOCEX.

3D MONTH

WEEK 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training
WEEK 2	TEWT (1)
WEEK 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training
WEEK 4	CPX (2)

NOTES:

1. This TEWT substitutes for performance of the Cell/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed this week. Ideally, the TEWTs discussion points and learning objectives would be developed to support/reinforce collective tasks trained in the previous month's Cell/Staff/Section, STAFFEX OR TOCEX training periods. The commander may also structure the TEWT to train staff coordination and integration tasks as key for the upcoming CPX.

2. Substitutes for performance of the STAFFEX that would normally be performed during the month.

As seen in the above, the commander structures his training program using recommended CATS training events, frequencies and critical gates to support METL training. Weekly or monthly training events can be conducted independently or integrated into other collective training exercises.

In scheduling training, the commander should take maximum advantage of higher headquarters directed events to accomplish his recommended CATS training events.

g. Horizontal and Vertical Integration. In executing this training strategy, the commander vertically integrates his training requirements with the battalion's/group's training requirements. Additionally, the company's training strategy is horizontally integrated with other companies in the battalion to ensure that combined arms training is effected.

APPENDIX B

ARMY UNIVERSAL TASK LIST

Army Universal Task List BOS are the major functions performed by the force on the battlefield to successfully execute Army operations (battles and engagements) in order to accomplish military objectives directed by the operational commander. Under each AUTL BOS are the collective tasks used for unit training. The AUTL BOS includes the following functional areas: deploy/conduct maneuver, employ firepower, protect the force, perform CSS and sustainment, and exercise command and control. Each of these functions is described below.

B-1. DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER. The deploy/conduct maneuver task area is the movement of combat forces to achieve a position of advantage with respect to enemy forces. This task area includes the employment of forces on the battlefield in combination with direct fire or fire potential. Indirect fires are included under the "Employ Fires" task area. It also includes the conduct of tactical movement of all types of units, mobility operations, counter-mobility operations, and tactical actions associated with force protection.

B-2. EMPLOY FIREPOWER. The employ firepower task area is the ability to apply firepower against air, ground, and sea targets. The collective and coordinated use of target acquisition data, direct and indirect fire weapons, armed aircraft of all types, and other lethal and nonlethal means against air, ground, and sea targets. This task includes artillery, mortar, and other non line-of-sight fires, naval gunfire, close air support, and electronic attack. It includes strike, air/surface/undersea warfare, naval surface fire support, counter air, and interdiction.

B-3. PROTECT THE FORCE. The protect the force task area is the protection of the tactical force's fighting potential so it can be applied at the appropriate time and place. It includes those measures the force takes to remain viable and functional by protecting itself from the effects of (or recovery from) enemy activities. Those active and passive measures encompass the following:

- a. Conduct air/missile defense.
- b. Protect against enemy hazards within the AO.
- c. Conduct local security operations.
- d. Conduct defensive information operations.

B-4. PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT. The perform CSS and sustainment task area is the support and service provided to sustain forces in an area of operations during war and during stability operations and support operations. This tactical task area involves the provision of supply, maintenance, transportation, CHS, personnel, legal, finance, religious, public affairs, contracting, distribution management, and field and other service support (such as general engineering support) required to sustain an operating force in an area of operations that may be joint, multinational, interagency, or a combination of these forces. Combat service support may be required to support contractors, civilians (such as refugees and disaster victims), or members of other governmental and non-governmental agencies. It includes civil-military operations.

B-5. EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL. The exercise C2 task area is the exercise and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and available forces in the accomplishment of the mission. C2 tasks are performed through an arrangement of personnel, information management, procedures, and equipment and facilities employed by a commander in planning, preparing for, executing, and assessing the conduct of operations to accomplish the mission. It includes the acquisition and management of information, the maintenance of situational understanding, the conduct of situational estimates to determine actions, applying risk management, and the direction and leading of subordinate forces.

APPENDIX C

Geneva Conventions

THE EFFECTS OF THE LAWS OF LAND WARFARE ON COMBAT HEALTH SUPPORT

C-1. The Law of War.

a. The conduct of armed hostilities on land is regulated by the law of land warfare (See DA Pamphlet 27-1 and FM 27-10). This body of law is inspired by the desire to diminish the evils of war by--

(1) Protecting both combatants and noncombatants from unnecessary suffering.

(2) Safeguarding certain fundamental human rights of persons who fall into the hands of the enemy, particularly prisoners of war, the wounded and sick, and civilians.

(3) Facilitating the restoration of peace.

b. The law of war places limits on the exercise of a belligerent's power in the interest of furthering that desire (diminishing the evils of war), and it requires that belligerents--

(1) Refrain from employing any kind or degree of violence which is not actually necessary for military purposes.

(2) Conduct hostilities with regard for the principles of humanity and chivalry.

C-2. Sources of the Law of War.

a. The law of war is derived from two principal sources.

(1) Treaties (or conventions) such as The Hague and Geneva Conventions.

(2) Custom--practices which by common consent and long-established uniform adherence has taken on the force of law.

b. Under the Constitution of the U.S., treaties constitute part of the "supreme Law of the Land," and thus must be observed by both military and civilian personnel. The unwritten or customary law of war is also part of the law of the U.S. It is binding upon the U.S., citizens of the U.S., and other persons serving this country.

C-3. The Geneva Conventions. The U.S. is a Party to numerous conventions and treaties pertinent to warfare on land. Collectively, these treaties are often referred to as The Hague and Geneva Conventions. Whereas The Hague Conventions concern the methods and means of warfare, The Geneva Conventions concern the victims of war or armed conflict. The Geneva Conventions are four separate international treaties, signed in 1949, and are respectively entitled:

a. "Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field" (GWS).

b. "Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea" (GWS Sea).

c. "Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War" (GPW).

d. "Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War" (GC).

The Conventions are very detailed and contain many provisions, which are tied directly to the unit and CHS missions.

C-4. Protection of the Sick and Wounded. The essential and dominant idea of the GWS is that the soldier who has been wounded or who is sick, and for that reason is out of the combat in a disabled condition, is from that moment protected. Friend or foe must be tended with the same care. From this principle, numerous obligations are imposed upon Parties to a conflict.

a. Protection and Care. Article 12 of the GWS imposes several specific obligations regarding the protection and care of the wounded and sick.

(1) The first paragraph of Article 12, GWS, states "Members of the armed forces and other persons mentioned in the following Article, who are wounded or sick, shall be respected and protected in all circumstances."

(a) The word "respect" means "to spare, not to attack," and "protect" means "to come to someone's defense, to lend help and support." These words make it unlawful to attack, kill, ill-treat, or in any way harm a fallen and unarmed enemy soldier. At the same time, these words impose an obligation to come to his aid and give him such care, as his condition requires.

(b) This obligation is applicable "in all circumstances." The wounded and sick are to be respected just as much when they are with their own army or in no man's land as when they have fallen into the hands of the enemy.

(c) Combatants as well as noncombatants are required to respect the wounded. The obligation also applies to civilians, in regard to whom Article 18 specifically states: "The civilian population shall respect these wounded and sick, and in particular abstain from offering them violence."

(d) The GWS does not define what is meant by "wounded or sick," nor has there ever been any definition of the degree of severity of a wound or a sickness entitling the wounded or sick combatant to respect. Any definition would necessarily be restrictive in character and would thereby open the door to misinterpretation and abuse. The meaning of the words "wounded and sick" is thus a matter of common sense and good faith. It is the act of falling or laying down of arms because of a wound or sickness, which constitutes the claim to protection. Only the soldier who is himself seeking to kill may be killed.

(e) The benefits afforded the wounded and sick extend not only to members of the armed forces, but to other categories of persons as well, classes of whom are specified in Article 13, GWS. Even though a wounded person is not in one of the categories enumerated in the Article, we still must respect and protect that person. There is a universal principle, which says that any wounded or sick person is entitled to respect and humane treatment and the care, which his condition requires. Wounded and sick civilians have the benefit of the safeguards of the GC.

(2) The second paragraph of Article 12, GWS, provides that the wounded and sick "...shall be treated humanely and cared for by the Party to the conflict in whose power they may be, without any adverse distinction found on sex, race, nationality, religion, political opinions, or other similar criteria..."

(a) All adverse distinctions are prohibited. Nothing can justify a belligerent in making any adverse distinction between wounded or sick who require his attention, whether they be friend or foe. Both are on equal footing in the matter of their claims to protection, respect, and care. The foregoing is not intended to prohibit concessions, particularly with respect to food, clothing, and shelter, which take into account the different national habits and backgrounds of the wounded and sick.

(b) The wounded and sick shall not be made the subjects of biological, scientific, or medical experiments of any kind which are not justified on medical grounds and dictated by a desire to improve their condition.

(c) The wounded and sick shall not willfully be left without medical assistance, nor shall conditions exposing them to contagion or infection be created.

(3) The only reasons, which can justify priority in the order of treatment, are reasons of medical urgency. This is the only justified exception to the principle of equality of treatment of the wounded.

(4) Paragraph 5 of Article 12, GWS, provides that if we must abandon wounded or sick, we have a moral obligation to, "as far as military considerations permit," leave medical supplies and personnel to assist in their care. This provision is in no way bound up with the absolute obligation imposed by paragraph 2 to care for the wounded. A belligerent can never refuse to care for enemy wounded on the pretext that his adversary has abandoned them without medical personnel and equipment.

b. Enemy Wounded and Sick. The protections accorded the wounded and sick apply to friend and foe alike without distinction. Certain provisions of the GWS; however, specifically concern enemy wounded and sick. There are also provisions in the GPW which, because they apply to prisoners of war generally, also apply to enemy wounded or sick.

(1) Article 14 of the GWS states that persons who are wounded and then captured have the status of prisoners of war. However, that wounded soldier is also a person who needs treatment. Therefore, a wounded soldier who falls into the hands of an enemy who is a Party to the GWS and the GPW, such as the U.S., will enjoy protection under both Conventions until his recovery. The GWS will take precedence over the GPW where the two overlap.

(2) Article 16 of the GWS requires the recording and forwarding of information regarding enemy wounded, sick, or dead (See AR 190-8 for disposition of an EPW after hospital care).

(3) When intelligence indicates that large numbers of EPW may result from an operation, medical units may require reinforcement to support the anticipated additional EPW patient work load. Procedures for estimating the medical work load involved in the treatment and care of EPW patients are described in FM 8-55.

c. Search for and Collection of Casualties. Article 15 of the GWS imposes a duty on combatants to search for and collect the dead and wounded and sick as soon as circumstances permit. It is left to the tactical commander to judge what is possible, and to decide to commit his medical personnel to this effort. If circumstances permit, an armistice or suspension of fire should be arranged to permit this effort.

d. Assistance of the Civilian Population. Article 18, GWS addresses the civilian population. It allows a belligerent to ask the civilians to collect and care for wounded or sick of whatever nationality. This provision does not relieve the military authorities of their responsibility to give both physical and moral care to the wounded and sick. The GWS also reminds the civilian population that they must respect the wounded and sick, and in particular must not injure them.

e. Enemy Civilian Wounded and Sick. Certain provisions of the GC are relevant to the unit and CHS missions.

(1) Article 16 of the GC provides that enemy civilians who are "wounded and sick, as well as the infirm, and expectant mothers, shall be the object of particular protection and respect." The Article also requires that, "as far as military considerations allow, each Party to the conflict shall facilitate the steps taken to search for the killed and wounded [civilians], to assist...other persons exposed to grave danger, and to protect them against pillage and ill-treatment [emphasis added]."

(a) The "protection and respect" to which wounded and sick enemy civilians are entitled is the same as that accorded to wounded and sick enemy military personnel.

(b) While Article 15 of the GWS requires Parties to a conflict to search for and collect the dead and wounded and sick members of the armed forces, Article 16 of the GC states that the Parties must "facilitate the steps taken" in regard to civilians. This recognizes the fact that saving civilians is the responsibility of the civilian authorities rather than of the military. The military is not required to provide injured civilians with medical care in a CZ. However, if we start providing treatment we are bound by the provisions of the GWS. Provisions for treating civilians (enemy or friendly) will be addressed in COMMZ regulations.

(2) In occupied territories, the Occupying Power must accord the inhabitants numerous protections as required by the GC. The provisions relevant to medical care include--

(a) Requirement to bring in medical supplies for the population if the resources of the occupied territory are inadequate.

(b) Prohibition on requisitioning medical supplies unless the requirements of the civilian population have been taken into account.

(c) Duty of ensuring and maintaining, with the cooperation of national and local authorities, the medical and hospital establishments and services, public health, and hygiene in the occupied territory.

(d) Requirement that medical personnel of all categories be allowed to carry out their duties.

(e) Prohibition on requisitioning civilian hospitals on other than a temporary basis and then only in cases of urgent necessity for the care of military wounded and sick and after suitable arrangements have been made for the civilian patients.

(f) Requirement to provide adequate medical treatment to detained persons.

(g) Requirement to provide adequate medical care in internment camps.

C-5. Protection and Identification of Medical Personnel. Article 24 of the GWS provides special protection for "Medical personnel exclusively engaged in the search for, or the collection, transport, or treatment of the wounded or sick, or in the prevention of disease, [and] staff exclusively engaged in the administration of medical units and establishments...[emphasis added]." Article 25 provides limited protection for "Members of the armed forces specially trained for employment, should the need arise, as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher-bearers, in the search for or the collection, transport, or treatment of the wounded and sick, if they are carrying out those duties at the time when they come into contact with the enemy or fall into his hands [emphasis added]."

a. Protection. There are two separate and distinct forms of protection.

(1) The first is protection from intentional attack if medical personnel are identifiable as such by an enemy in a combat environment. Normally this is facilitated by medical personnel wearing an arm band bearing the Distinctive Emblem (a red cross or red crescent, on a white background), or by their employment in a medical unit, establishment, or vehicle (including medical aircraft and hospital ships) that displays the Distinctive Emblem. Persons protected by Article 25 may wear an arm band bearing a miniature Distinctive Emblem only while executing medical duties.

(2) The second protection provided by the GWS pertains to medical personnel who fall into the hands of the enemy. Article 24 personnel are entitled to "retained person" status. They are not deemed to be prisoners of war, but otherwise benefit from the protections of the GPW. They are authorized to carry out medical duties only, and "shall be retained only in so far as the state of health...and the number of prisoners of war require." Article 25 personnel are prisoners of war, but shall be employed on their medical duties in so far as the need arises. They may be required to perform other duties or labor, and they may be held until a general repatriation of prisoners of war is accomplished upon the cessation of hostilities.

b. Specific Cases. The AMEDD personnel and non-AMEDD personnel assigned to medical units fall into the category identified in Article 24 provided they meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of that article. The U.S. Army does not have any personnel who officially fall into the category identified in Article 25. While it is not a violation of the GWS for Article 24 personnel to perform nonmedical duties, it should be understood; however, that Article 24 personnel lose their protected status under that article if they perform duties or tasks inconsistent with their noncombatant role. Should those personnel later take up their medical duties again, a reasonable argument might be made that they cannot regain Article 24 status since they have not been exclusively engaged in medical duties and that such switching of roles might at best cause such personnel to fall under the category identified in Article 25.

(1) While only Article 25 refers to nurses, nurses are Article 24 personnel if they meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of that article.

(2) The AMEDD officers and NCOs assigned to nonmedical positions in an FSB, MSB, or DISCOM are neither Article 24 nor Article 25 personnel. Such assignments place them in the role of a combatant. Examples of such personnel are--

(a) The AMEDD officers serving as commanders of FSBs or MSBs with responsibility for base or base cluster defense as well as command and control of medical and nonmedical units.

(b) The AMEDD officers and NCOs assigned to nonmedical staff positions with an FSB or MSB with responsibility for planning and supervising the logistics support for a combat maneuver brigade or other combat unit.

(3) Article 24 personnel who might become Article 25 personnel by virtue of their switching roles could include the following:

(a) A medical company commander, a physician, or the executive officer, an MSC officer, detailed as convoy march unit commander with responsibility for medical and nonmedical unit routes of march, convoy control, defense, and repulsing attacks.

(b) Helicopter pilots who are permanently assigned to a dedicated medical aviation unit to fly medical evacuation helicopters, but fly helicopters not bearing the red cross emblems on standard combat missions during other times.

(4) The GWS does not itself prohibit the use of Article 24 personnel in perimeter defense of nonmedical units such as unit trains logistics areas or base clusters under overall security defense plans, but the policy of the U.S. Army is that Article 24 personnel will not be used for this purpose. Adherence to this policy should avoid any issues regarding their status under the GWS due to a temporary change in their role from noncombatant to combatant. Medical personnel may guard their own unit without any concurrent loss of their protected status.

c. Identification Cards and Arm Bands. Medical personnel who meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of Article 24, GWS, are entitled to wear an arm band bearing the Distinctive Emblem of the red cross and carry the medical personnel identification card authorized in Article 40, GWS (in the U.S. armed services, DD Form 1934). Article 25 personnel and medical personnel serving in positions that do not meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of Article 24 are not entitled to carry the medical personnel identification card or wear the Distinctive Emblem arm band. Such personnel carry a standard military identification card (DD Form 2A(ACT) or DD Form 2A(RES)) and, under Article 25, may wear an arm band bearing a miniature Distinctive Emblem when executing medical duties. (For a discussion of ID cards, see AR 600-8-14.)

C-6. Protection and Identification of Medical Units and Establishments, Buildings and Materiel, and Medical Transports.

a. Protection. There are two separate and distinct forms of protection.

(1) The first is protection from intentional attack if medical units, establishments, or transports are identifiable as such by an enemy in a combat environment. Normally, this is facilitated by medical units or establishments flying a white flag with a red cross and by marking buildings and transport vehicles with the red cross emblem.

(a) It follows that if we cannot attack recognizable medical units, establishments, or transports, we should allow them to continue to give treatment to the wounded in their care as long as this is necessary.

(b) All vehicles employed exclusively on medical transport duty are protected on the field of battle. Medical vehicles being used for both military and medical purposes, such as moving wounded personnel during an evacuation and carrying retreating belligerents as well, are not entitled to protection.

(c) Medical aircraft, like medical transports, are protected from intentional attack, but with a major difference: they are protected only "while flying at heights, times, and on routes specifically agreed upon between the belligerents concerned." Article 36, GWS. Such agreements may be made for each specific case or may be of a general nature, concluded for the duration of hostilities. If there is no agreement, belligerents use medical aircraft at their own risk and peril.

(d) The second paragraph of Article 19 imposes an obligation upon belligerents to "ensure that the said medical establishments and units are, as far as possible, situated in such a manner that attacks against military objectives cannot imperil their safety." Hospitals should be sited alone, as far as possible from military objectives. The unintentional bombardment of a medical establishment or unit due to its presence among or in proximity to valid military objectives is not a violation of the GWS. Legal protection is certainly valuable, but it is more valuable still when accompanied by practical safeguards.

(2) The second protection provided by the GWS pertains to medical units, establishments, materiel, and transports which fall into the hands of the enemy.

(a) Captured mobile medical unit materiel is to be used first to treat the patients in the captured unit. If there are no patients in the captured unit, or when those who were there have been moved, the materiel is to be used for the treatment of other wounded and sick persons. (See Chapter 6 for additional information on captured enemy equipment.)

(b) Generally, the buildings, materiel, and stores of fixed medical establishments will continue to be used to treat wounded and sick. However, after provision is made to care for remaining patients, tactical commanders may make other use of them. All distinctive markings must be removed if the buildings are to be used for other than medical purposes.

(c) The materiel and stores of fixed establishments and mobile medical units are not to be intentionally destroyed, even to prevent them from falling into enemy hands. The actual buildings may in certain extreme cases have to be destroyed for tactical reasons.

(d) Medical transports which fall into enemy hands may be used for any purpose once arrangements have been made for the medical care of the wounded and sick they contain. The distinctive markings must be removed if they are to be used for nonmedical purposes.

(e) A medical aircraft is supposed to obey a summons to land for inspection. If it is performing its medical mission, it is supposed to be released to continue its flight. If examination reveals that an act "harmful to the enemy" (that is if the aircraft is carrying munitions, for example) has been committed, it loses the protections of the Convention and may be seized. If a medical aircraft makes an involuntary landing, all aboard, except the medical personnel, will be prisoners of war. A medical aircraft refusing a summons to land is a fair target.

b. Identification. The GWS contains several provisions regarding the use of the red cross emblem on medical units, establishments, and transports (the identification of medical personnel has been previously discussed).

(1) Article 39 of the GWS reads as follows: "Under the direction of the competent military authority, the emblem shall be displayed on the flags, armlets, and on all equipment employed in the Medical Service."

(a) There is no obligation on a belligerent to mark his units with the emblem. Sometimes a commander (generally no lower than a brigade commander for U.S. forces) may order the camouflage of his medical units in order to conceal the presence or real strength of his forces. The enemy must respect a medical unit if he knows of its presence, even one, which is camouflaged or not marked. The absence of a visible red cross emblem; however, coupled with a lack of knowledge on the part of the enemy as to the unit's protected status, may render that unit's protection valueless.

(b) The distinctive emblem is not a red cross alone; it is a red cross on a white background. Should there be some good reason; however, why an object protected by the Convention can only be marked with a red cross without a white background, belligerents may not make the fact that it is so marked a pretext for refusing to respect it.

(c) Some countries use the red crescent on a white background in place of the red cross. This emblem is recognized as an authorized exception under Article 38, GWS. Although not specifically authorized as a symbol in lieu of the red cross, enemies of Israel in past wars have recognized the red Star of David and have afforded it the same respect as the red cross. This showed compliance with the general rule that the wounded and sick must be respected and protected when they are recognized as such, even when not properly marked.

(d) The initial phrase of Article 39 shows that it is the military commander who controls the emblem and can give or withhold permission to use it. He is at all times responsible for the use made of the emblem and must see that it is not improperly used by the troops or by individuals.

(2) Article 42 of the GWS specifically addresses the marking of medical units and establishments.

(a) "The distinctive flag of the Convention shall be hoisted only over such medical units and establishments as are entitled to be respected under the Convention, and only with the consent of the military authorities." Paragraph 1, Article 42, GWS. Although the Convention does not define "the distinctive flag of the Conventions," what is meant is a white flag with a red cross in its center. Also, the word "flag" must be taken in its broadest sense. Hospitals are often marked by one or several red cross emblems painted on the roof. Finally, the military authority must consent to the use of the flag (see the above comments on Article 39) and must ensure that the flag is used only on buildings entitled to protection.

(b) "In mobile units, as in fixed establishments, [the distinctive flag] may be accompanied by the national flag of the Party to the conflict to which the unit or establishment belongs." Paragraph 2, Article 42, GWS. This provision makes it optional to fly the national flag with the red cross flag. It should be noted that on a battlefield, the national flag is a symbol of belligerency and is therefore likely to provoke attack.

(3) In a NATO conflict, camouflage of the Geneva emblem is provided on medical facilities where the lack of camouflage might compromise tactical operations. Medical facilities on land, supporting forces of other nations, will display or camouflage the Geneva emblem in accordance with national regulations and procedures. When failure to camouflage would endanger or compromise tactical operations, the camouflage of medical facilities may be ordered by a NATO commander of at least brigade level or equivalent. Such an order is to be temporary and local in nature and countermanded as soon as the circumstances permit. It is not envisaged that fixed, large, medical facilities would be camouflaged. The Standardization Agreement defines "medical facilities" as "medical units, medical vehicles, and medical aircraft on the ground." (For information on camouflage painting, see AR 750-1.)

NOTE

There is no such thing as a "camouflaged" red cross. When camouflaging a medical unit, either cover up the red cross or take it down. A black cross on an olive drab background is not a symbol recognized under the Geneva Conventions.

(4) Medical evacuation vehicles and medical materiel containers will, unless ordered otherwise, be marked with the Distinctive Emblem (red cross on a white background) and other distinguishing insignia and color markings when required.

C-7. Loss of Protection of Medical Establishments and Units. Medical assets lose their protected status by committing acts "harmful to the enemy," Article 21, GWS. A warning must be given to the offending unit and a reasonable amount of time allowed to cease such activity.

a. Acts Harmful to the Enemy. The phrase "acts harmful to the enemy" is not defined in the Convention, but should be considered to include acts the purpose or effect of which is to harm the enemy, by facilitating or impeding military operations. Such harmful acts would include, for example, the use of a hospital as a shelter for able-bodied combatants, as an arms or ammunition dump, or as a military observation post. Another instance would be the deliberate siting of a medical unit in a position where it would impede an enemy attack.

b. Warning and Time Limit. The enemy has to warn the unit to put an end to the harmful acts and must fix a time limit on the conclusion of which he may open fire or attack if the warning has not been complied with. The phrase "in all appropriate cases" recognizes that there might obviously be cases where no time limit could be allowed. A body of troops approaching a hospital and met by heavy fire from every window would return fire without delay.

c. Use of Smoke and Obscurants. The use of smoke and obscurants during medical evacuation operations does not differ from the use of camouflage and does not constitute an act harmful to the enemy.

C-8. Conditions Not Depriving Medical Units and Establishments of Protection.

a. Article 22 of the GWS reads as follows: "The following conditions shall not be considered as depriving a medical unit or establishment of the protection guaranteed by Article 19:

(1) That the personnel of the unit or establishment are armed, and that they use the arms in their own defense, or in that of the wounded and sick in their charge.

(2) That in the absence of armed orderlies, the unit or establishment is protected by a picket or by sentries or by an escort.

(3) That small arms and ammunition taken from the wounded and sick and not yet handed to the proper service, are found in the unit or establishment.

(4) That personnel and materiel of the veterinary service are found in the unit or establishment, without forming an integral part thereof.

(5) That the humanitarian activities of medical units and establishments or of their personnel extend to the care of civilian wounded or sick."

b. These five conditions are not to be regarded as acts harmful to the enemy. These are particular cases where a medical unit retains its character as such, and its right to immunity, in spite of certain appearances, which might have led to the contrary, conclusion or, at least, created some doubt.

(1) Defense of medical units and self-defense by medical personnel. A medical unit is granted a privileged status under the laws of war. This status is based on the view that medical personnel are not combatants and that their role in the combat area is exclusively a humanitarian one. In recognition of the necessity of self-defense; however, medical personnel may be armed for their own defense or for the protection of the wounded and sick under their charge. To retain this privileged status, they must refrain from all aggressive action, and may only employ their weapons if attacked in violation of the Convention. They may not employ arms against enemy forces acting in conformity with the law of war and may not use force to prevent the capture of their unit by the enemy (it is, on the other hand, perfectly legitimate for a medical unit to withdraw in the face of the enemy). Medical personnel who use their arms in circumstances not justified by the law of war expose themselves to penalties for violation of the law of war and, provided they have been given due warning to cease such acts, may also forfeit the protection of the medical unit or establishment which they are protecting.

(a) Medical personnel may carry only small arms, such as rifles or pistols or authorized substitutes. AR 71-32 provides the policy that governs the small arms medical personnel are authorized to carry. AR 350-41 also supports this policy. It states "AMEDD personnel and non-AMEDD personnel in medical units will not be required to train or qualify with weapons other than individual or small arms weapons. However, AMEDD personnel attending training at NCOES courses will receive weapons instruction that is part of the curriculum. This will ensure that successful completion of the course is not jeopardized by failure to attend the weapons training portion of the curriculum."

(b) The presence of machine guns, grenade launchers, booby traps, hand grenades, light antitank weapons, or mines (regardless of the method by which they are detonated) in or around a medical unit or establishment would seriously jeopardize its entitlement to privileged status under the GWS. The deliberate arming of a medical unit with such items could constitute an act harmful to the enemy and cause the medical unit to lose its protection, regardless of the location of the medical unit. See the previous discussion of loss of protection of medical units and establishments.

(2) Guarding of medical units. As a rule, a medical unit is to be guarded by its own personnel. However, it will not lose its protected status if the guard is performed by a number of armed soldiers. The military guard attached to a medical unit may use its weapons, just as armed medical personnel may, to ensure the protection of the unit. But, as in the case of medical personnel, the soldiers may only act in a purely defensive manner, and may not oppose the occupation or control of the unit by an enemy who is respecting the unit's privileged status. The status of such soldiers is that of ordinary members of the armed forces. The mere fact of their presence with a medical unit will shelter them from attack. In case of capture, they will be prisoners of war.

(3) Arms and ammunition taken from the wounded. Wounded arriving in a medical unit may still be in possession of small arms and ammunition, which will be taken from them and handed to authorities outside the medical unit. Should the enemy capture a unit before it is able to get rid of these arms, their presence is not of itself cause for denying the protection to be accorded the medical unit under the GWS.

(4) Personnel and materiel of the veterinary corps. The presence of personnel and materiel of the veterinary corps with a medical unit is authorized, even where they do not form an integral part of such unit.

(5) Care of civilian wounded or sick. A medical unit or establishment protected by the GWS may take in civilians as well as military wounded and sick without jeopardizing its privileged status. This clause merely sanctions what is actually done in practice.

C-9. 1977 Protocols to The Geneva Conventions. Amendments to The Geneva Conventions have been ratified by some of our allies and potential adversaries. The U.S. representative to the diplomatic conference signed these amendments, but our government has not officially ratified them.

GLOSSARY

AA	assembly area
AACG	arrival airfield control group
AAPS	Automated Airlift Planning System
AAR	after action review
AC	Active Component
ADC	area damage control
AIT	automated information technology
AM	amplitude modulation
AMEDD	Army Medical Department
AO	area of operations
APOD	aerial port of debarkation
APOE	aerial port of embarkation
AR	Army regulation
ARNG	Army National Guard
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
Arty	artillery
A/SPOD	aerial/sea port of debarkation
A/SPOE	aerial/sea port of embarkation
ASG	Area Support Group
ASL	authorized stockage list
ATTN	attention
ATWESS	antitank weapon effects signature simulator
AUEL	automated unit equipment list
AUTL	Army Universal Task List
BBPCT	blocking, bracing, packing, crating, and tie down
BBS	battalion/brigade simulation
BCOC	Base Cluster Operations Center
BDAR	battle damage assessment and repair
BF	battle fatigue
BFACS	Battlefield Functional Area Control System
BLCP	Beach Lighterage Control Point
BLTM	Battalion Level Training Model
BOS	Battlefield Operating Systems
C2	command and control
cal	caliber
CAS	close air support
CATS	combined arms training strategy
Cdr	commander
CFX	command field exercise
CHS	combat health support
Cmdr	commander
CMF	career management field
COA	course of action
COMDTINST	commandant instruction
COMEX	communications exercise
COMMZ	communications zone
COMSEC	communications security
CONPLAN	contingency plan

CONUS	continental United States
CONUSA	the Numbered Armies in the Continental United States
CP	command post
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CQ	charge of quarters
CRT	Combat Repair Team
CS	chemical smoke
CSM	command sergeant major
CSS	combat service support
CTA	common tables of allowances
CTC	Cargo Transfer Company
CTG	command training guidance
CZ	combat zone
DA	Department of the Army
DACG	departure airfield control group
D.C.	District of Columbia
DD	Department of Defense
DE	directed energy
DEL	deployment equipment list
DISCOM	Division Support Command
DOD	Department of Defense
DODAAC	Department of Defense Activity Address Code
DP	departure point
DS	direct support
DS2	decontaminating solution #2
DZ	drop zone
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
ELSEC	electronic security
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERT	Equipment Reception Team
ETM	electronic technical manual
EW	electronic warfare
EXEVAL	external evaluation
1SG	first sergeant
F	Fahrenheit
FAD	force activity designator
FASCAM	family of scatterable mines
FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
FDC	Fire Direction Center
FM	field manual; frequency modulation
FMC	field medical card
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FSB	Forward Support Battalion
FST	Field Sanitation Team
FTX	field training exercise
GS	general support
HAZMAT	hazardous material

HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HN	host nation
HQ	headquarters
hr	hour(s)
IAW	in accordance with
IBCT	Interim Brigade Combat Team
ID	identification
IEW	intelligence and electronic warfare
INTSUM	intelligence summary
ITO	installation transportation officer
ITV	in-transit visibility
JFC	Joint Force Commander
JLCC	Joint Lighterage Control Center
JLOTS	joint logistics-over-the-shore
JTTP	Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
KIA	killed in action
LAW	light antitank weapon
LCC	Lighterage Control Center
LCM	landing craft, medium
LCP	Lighterage Control Point
LCU	landing craft, utility
LCX	logistics coordination exercise
LIN	line item number
LO/LO	load on/load off
LO/RO	load on/roll off
LOC	Logistics Operations Center
LOD	line of duty
LOGPAC	logistics package
LOTS	logistics-over-the-shore
LP	listening post
LRP	logistics resupply point
LSV	Logistics Support Vessel
LT	lieutenant
LTA	local training area
LZ	landing zone
MA	marshalling area
MACOM	major Army command
MACP	mortuary affairs collection point
MAJ	major
MAPEX	map exercise
MCA	movement control agency
MCO	maintenance control officer
MCS	maintenance control section
MCSR	materiel condition status report
MCT	movement control team
MCX	movement coordination exercise

MED	medical
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time available
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, civilian considerations
MFFIMS	Mass Fatality Field Information Management System
MHE	materiel handling equipment
MIJI	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
MIL	master incident list
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
min	minute(s)
mm	millimeter
MMC	materiel management center
MOBPLAN	mobilization plan
MOOTW	military operations other than war
MOPP	mission oriented protective posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations in urban terrain
MP	military police; multiple purpose
MSB	main support battalion
MSC	medical support center
MSR	main supply route
MST	maintenance support team
MTF	medical treatment facility
MTP	mission training plan
MTS	Movement Tracking System
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOES	Non-Commissioned Officer Education System
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
NGB	National Guard Bureau
NLT	not later than
NM	nautical mile
No.	number
OC	observer controller
OCIE	organizational clothing and individual equipment
OCONUS	outside continental United States
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OFS	Officer Foundation System
OIC	officer in charge
OP	observation post
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operations plan
OPORD	operations order
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operational tempo

Para	paragraph
PC	production control
PEWS	Platoon Early Warning System
PIR	priority intelligence requirement
PLL	prescribed load list
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
PMCT	port movement control team
POC	point of contact
POD	port of debarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POV	privately owned vehicle
PREPO	prepositioned
PSA	port support activity
psi	pounds per square inch
QC	quality control
RAA	redeployment assembly area
RC	Reserve Component
rds	rounds
RF	radio frequency
RO/LO	roll on/load off
RO/RO	roll on/roll off
ROD	report of discrepancy
RP	release point
RRDF	roll on/roll off discharge facility
RSO&I	reception, staging, onward movement, and integration
RSOP	redeployment standing operating procedure
RTD	return to duty
S1	adjutant (US Army)
S2	intelligence officer (US Army)
S3	operations and training officer (US Army)
S2/S3	intelligence and operations officer (US Army)
S4	supply officer (US Army)
S6	communications/electronics officer
SA	staging area
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
SAW	squad automatic weapon
SHELLREP	shelling report
SIGSEC	signal security
SINCGARS	Single Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System
SITREP	situation report
SL	skill level
SLCP	Ship Lighterage Control Point
SLWT	side-loading warping tug
SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SOI	signal operating instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure

SP	start point
SPOD	sea port of debarkation
SPOE	sea port of embarkation
SPOTREP	spot report
SPT	sound powered telephone
SRP	soldiers readiness program
SSA	supply support activity
SSI	standing signal instruction
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STP	soldier training publication
STRAC	standards in training commission
STX	situational training exercise
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TA	Theater Army
TAA	tactical assembly area
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators and simulations
TALCE	tanker airlift control element
TAMMC	Theater Army Material Management Center
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TAT	to accompany troops
TB	technical bulletin
TC	training circular
TC-ACCIS	Transportation Coordinator's-Automated Command and Control Information System
TCF	tactical combat force
TEMPEST	compromising emanations controls
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TG	trainer's guide
TM	technical manual
tng	training
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRC	training readiness conditions
TSB	theater support brigade
TSC	theater support command
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TTP	tactics, techniques, and procedures
UBL	unit basic load
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
ULC	unit level computer
ULLS-G	Unit Level Logistics System-Ground
ULLS-S4	Unit Level Logistics System-S4
UMC	unit movement coordinator
UMO	unit movement officer
UPW	unit proficiency worksheet

US	United States (of America)
USA	United States Army
USACASCOM	United States Army Combined Arms Support Command
USAR	United States Army Reserve
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USR	unit status report
VA	Virginia
WARNO	warning order
WESTCOM	Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
wpn	weapon
XO	executive officer

REFERENCES

SOURCES USED (These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication)

- AR 30-22. *The Army Food Program*. 30 August 2002
- AR 40-5. *Preventive Medicine*. 15 October 1990
- AR 40-66. *Medical Record Administration and Health Care Documentation*. 3 May 1999
- AR 56-9. *Watercraft*. 7 February 2002
- AR 71-32. *Force Development and Documentation - Consolidated Policies*. 3 March 1997
- AR 190-8. *Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees*. 1 October 1997
- AR 190-13. *The Army Physical Security Program*. 30 September 1993
- AR 220-1. *Unit Status Reporting*. 30 November 2001
- AR 220-10. *Preparation for Overseas Movement of Units (POM)*. 15 June 1973
- AR 350-1. *Army Training*. 1 August 1981
- AR 350-41. *Training in Units*. 19 March 1993
- AR 380-5. *Department of the Army Information Security Program*. 29 September 2000
- AR 380-19. *Information Systems Security*. 27 February 1998
- AR 380-19-1. *(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U)*. September 1990
- AR 380-40. *(O) Policy for Safeguarding and Controlling Communications Security (COMSEC) Material (U)*. 30 June 2000
- AR 530-1. *Operations Security (OPSEC)*. 3 March 1995
- AR 600-8-1. *Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance*. 20 October 1994
- AR 600-8-2. *Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS)*. 30 October 1987
- AR 600-8-14. *Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel*. 1 March 1998
- AR 600-8-19. *Enlisted Promotions and Reductions*. 2 October 2000
- AR 600-8-22. *Military Awards*. 25 February 1995
- AR 600-8-24. *Officer Transfers and Discharges*. 21 July 1995
- AR 600-8-104. *Military Personnel Information Management/Records*. 27 April 1992
- AR 700-84. *Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing*. 15 May 1983
- AR 700-138. *Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability*. 16 September 1997
- AR 710-2. *Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level*. 31 October 1997
- AR 725-50. *Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System*. 15 November 1995
- AR 735-5. *Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability*. 10 June 2002
- AR 750-1. *Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations*. 1 August 1994
- ARTEP 55-816-MTP. *Mission Training Plan for the Headquarters, Transportation Terminal Battalion*. 1 August 2002
- COMDTINST M16672.2C. *Navigation Rules, International-Inland*. 1 October 1995
- DA Form 2028. *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*. 1 February 1974
- DA Form 2404. *Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet*. 1 April 1979
- DA Form 2406. *Materiel Condition Status Report*. April 1993
- DA Form 3999-4. *Maintenance Work Request Envelope*. 1 April 1975
- DA Pamphlet 27-1. *Treaties Governing Land Warfare*. 7 December 1956
- DA Pamphlet 350-38. *Standards in Weapons Training*. 3 July 1997
- DA Pamphlet 350-39. *Standards in Weapons Training (Special Operations Forces)*. 3 July 1997
- DA Pamphlet 385-1. *Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide*. 29 November 2001
- DA Pamphlet 710-2-1. *Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)*. 31 December 1997
- DA Pamphlet 738-750. *Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management*

ARTEP 55-828-30-MTP

System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

- DA Pamphlet 750-1.** *Leader's Unit Level Maintenance Handbook.* 15 February 1994
- DA Pamphlet 750-35.** *Guide for Motor Pool Operations.* 1 August 1994
- DD Form 2A(ACT).** *Active Duty Military ID Card.* July 1974
- DD Form 2A(RES).** *Armed Forces of the United States Identification Card (Reserve).* May 1979
- DD Form 565.** *Statement of Recognition of Deceased.* July 1998
- DD Form 567.** *Record of Search and Recovery.* July 1998
- DD Form 1380.** *US Field Medical Card.* December 1991
- DD Form 1934.** *Geneva Conventions Identity Card for Medical and Religious Personnel Who Serve In or Accompany the Armed Forces.* July 1974
- DOD Directive 4500.9.** *Transportation and Traffic Management.* 26 January 1989
- DOD MFFIMS.** *Department of Defense Mass Fatality Field Information Management System*
- DOD Regulation 4500.9-R, Part III.** *Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility).* April 1997
- DOD Regulation 5030.49-R.** *Customs Inspection.* 27 May 1977
- FM 3-0.** *Operations.* 14 June 2001
- FM 3-3.** *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance.* 16 November 1992
- FM 3-4.** *NBC Protection.* 29 May 1992
- FM 3-5.** *NBC Decontamination.* 28 July 2000
- FM 3-19.4.** *Military Police Leaders' Handbook.* 4 March 2002
- FM 3-19.30.** *Physical Security.* 8 January 2001
- FM 3-19.40.** *Military Policy Internment/Resettlement Operations.* 1 August 2001
- FM 3-25.26.** *Map Reading and Land Navigation.* 20 July 2001
- FM 3-100.** *Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals.* 8 May 1996
- FM 3-100.4.** *Environmental Considerations in Military Operations.* 15 June 2000
- FM 4-25.12.** *Unit Field Sanitation Team.* 25 January 2002
- FM 4-30.3.** *Maintenance Operations and Procedures.* 1 September 2000
- FM 5-103.** *Survivability.* 10 June 1985
- FM 6-22.5.** *Combat Stress.* 23 June 2000
- FM 7-0.** *Training the Force.* 22 October 2002
- FM 7-8.** *Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.* 22 April 1992
- FM 7-10.** *The Infantry Rifle Company.* 14 December 1990
- FM 7-20.** *The Infantry Battalion.* 6 April 1992
- FM 8-10.** *Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations.* 1 March 1991
- FM 8-10-6.** *Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 14 April 2000
- FM 8-10-7.** *Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment.* 22 April 1993
- FM 8-55.** *Planning for Health Service Support.* 9 September 1994
- FM 8-285.** *Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries.* 22 December 1995
- FM 9-43-2.** *Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair.* 3 October 1995
- FM 10-23.** *Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operation Management.* 18 April 1996
- FM 10-27-1.** *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations.* 20 April 1993
- FM 10-27-2.** *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations.* 18 June 1991
- FM 10-27-3.** *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Headquarters Operations.* 30 October 1990
- FM 10-64.** *Mortuary Affairs Operations.* 16 February 1999
- FM 10-450-3.** *Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment.*

10 April 1997

- FM 11-32. *Combat Net Radio Operations*. 15 October 1990
- FM 12-6. *Personnel Doctrine*. 9 September 1994
- FM 20-3. *Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys*. 30 August 1999
- FM 21-10. *Field Hygiene and Sanitation*. 21 June 2000
- FM 21-11. *First Aid for Soldiers*. 27 October 1988
- FM 21-16. *Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures*. 30 August 1994
- FM 21-75. *Combat Skills of the Soldier*. 3 August 1984
- FM 21-305. *Manual for the Wheeled Vehicle Driver*. 27 August 1993
- FM 22-51. *Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control*. 29 September 1994
- FM 23-9. *M16A1 Rifle and M16A2 Rifle Marksmanship*. 3 July 1989
- FM 24-16. *Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records and Reports*. 7 April 1978
- FM 24-17. *Tactical Records Traffic System (TRTS)*. 17 September 1991
- FM 24-18. *Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques*. 30 September 1987
- FM 24-19. *Radio Operator's Handbook*. 24 May 1991
- FM 24-22. *Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS)*. 30 June 1977
- FM 24-33. *Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures*. 17 July 1990
- FM 24-35. *(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI"*. 26 October 1990
- FM 24-35-1. *(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions*. 2 October 1990
- FM 25-100. *Training the Force*. 15 November 1988
- FM 25-101. *Battle Focused Training*. 30 September 1990
- FM 27-10. *The Law of Land Warfare*. 18 July 1956
- FM 34-54. *Technical Intelligence*. 30 January 1998
- FM 44-8. *Combined Arms for the Air Defense*. 1 June 1999
- FM 44-80. *Visual Aircraft Recognition*. 30 September 1996
- FM 55-1. *Transportation Operations*. 3 October 1995
- FM 55-9. *Unit Air Movement Planning*. 5 April 1993
- FM 55-10. *Movement Control*. 9 February 1999
- FM 55-15. *Transportation Reference Data*. 27 October 1997
- FM 55-30. *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations*. 27 June 1997
- FM 55-50. *Army Water Transport Operations*. 30 September 1993
- FM 55-60. *Army Terminal Operations*. 15 April 1996
- FM 55-65. *Strategic Deployment*. 3 October 1995
- FM 55-450-4. *Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures*.
30 May 1998
- FM 55-450-5. *Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Dual-Point Load Rigging Procedures*.
30 August 1999
- FM 55-501. *Marine Crewman's Handbook*. 1 December 1999
- FM 55-502. *Army Watercraft Safety*. 23 December 1996
- FM 55-509. *Marine Engineman's Handbook*. 3 October 1986
- FM 55-509-1. *Introduction to Marine Electricity*. 1 September 1994
- FM 57-38. *Pathfinder Operations*. 9 April 1993
- FM 63-2. *Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions*.
20 May 1991
- FM 63-2-1. *Division Support Command Light Infantry, Airborne, and Air Assault Divisions*.
16 November 1992
- FM 63-20. *Forward Support Battalion*. 26 February 1990
- FM 63-21. *Main Support Battalion*. 7 August 1990
- FM 90-26. *Airborne Operations*. 18 December 1990
- FM 100-14. *Risk Management*. 23 April 1998

- FM 100-17.** *Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization.* 28 October 1992
FM 100-17-3. *Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration.* 17 March 1999
FM 101-5. *Staff Organization and Operations.* 31 May 1997

- JTTP 4-06.** *Joint Tactics, Techniques, And Procedures For Mortuary Affairs In Joint Operations.*
28 August 1996
- STP 10-92G1-SM-TG.** *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Food Service Specialist, MOS 92G, Skill Level 1.* 16 February 1999
- STP 10-92G25-SM-TG.** *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Food Service Specialist, MOS 92G, Skill Levels - 2/3/4/5.* 16 February 1999
- STP 21-1-SMCT.** *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1.* 1 October 2001
- STP 21-24-SMCT.** *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4.*
1 October 2001
- STP 55-88H1-SM.** *Soldier's Manual, MOS 88H, Cargo Specialist, Skill Level 1.*
13 October 1993
- STP 55-88K14-SM-TG.** *Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 88K, Watercraft Operator.* 12 December 1991
- STP 55-88L1-SM.** *Soldier's Manual, MOS 88L, Watercraft Engineer, Skill Level 1.*
17 December 1991
- STP 55-88L24-SM-TG.** *Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 88L, Watercraft Engineer.* 3 March 1992
- TB 55-46-1.** *Standard Characteristics (Dimensions, Weight, and Cube) for Transportability of Military Vehicles and Other Outsize/Overweight Equipment (In TOE Line Item Number Sequence).* 1 January 2001
- TB MED 530.** *Occupational and Environmental Health Food Service Sanitation.*
28 November 1991
- TC 24-20.** *Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques.* 3 October 1988
- TC 25-1.** *Training Land.* 30 September 1991
- TC 25-6.** *Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System.* 3 October 1995
- TC 25-8.** *Training Ranges.* 25 February 1992
- TC 25-20.** *A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews.* 30 September 1993
- TM 10-412.** *Armed Forces Recipe Service and Index of Recipes.* 1 September 1992
- TM 10-7360-206-13.** *Operator's, Organizational and Direct Support Maintenance Manual for Kitchen, Field, Trailer Mounted, MKT-75, MKT-75A, MKT-82, MKT-85, MKT-85S, MKT-90, and MKT-95.* 1 June 1984
- TM 38-250.** *Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments.* 1 March 1997
- TM 43-0002-33.** *Destruction of Conventional Ammunition and Improved Conventional Munitions (ICM) to Prevent Enemy Use.* 15 November 1993
- TM 55-1945-205-10-2.** *Operators Manual for Modular Causeway System (MCS) Roll On/Roll Off Discharge Facility (RRDF).* 15 May 2002
- TM 55-2200-001-12.** *Transportability Guidance for Application of Blocking, Bracing and Tiedown Materials for Rail Transport.* 31 May 1978
- TM 750-244-2.** *Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command).* 14 March 1972
- TM 750-244-3.** *Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command).* 23 September 1969
- TM 750-244-6.** *Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command).* 3 October 1972
- TM 750-244-7.** *Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090, and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use.*
18 June 1970
- TRADOC Pamphlet 525-6.** *Operations Security, Doctrinal Guidelines for Tactical Units and Trainers.* 1 May 1981

TRADOC Regulation 350-70. *Systems Approach to Training (Management, Processes, and Products).* 9 March 1999

QUESTIONNAIRE

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) USER FEED

User feedback is an important link in the process of improving training publications. Your recommendations are requested to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions and mail to Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-6000.

MTP NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

- 1. What is your position (Cdr, Platoon Sergeant, etc.)? _____
- 2. How long have you served in this position? _____
- 3. How long have you served in this unit? _____
- 4. What is your component? _____
- 5. What is your unit?
A. CONUS B. USAREUR
C. WESTCOM D. 8TH USA
E. Other (specify) _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

A. Has made training worse. _____

B. Has made training better. _____

C. Has had no effect on training. _____

D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

A. More difficult. _____

B. Easier. _____

C. About the same. _____

D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES: STX AND FTX.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this intended purpose?

A. They do not prepare the unit at all. _____

B. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. _____

C. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.

D. They help but only provide 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.

E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added or deleted from the MTP (specify FTX or STX)?

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements.

I. Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills. _____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

I. Does not interface well with other training products. _____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

16. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained personnel in or participated in personally?

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP:

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

A. Leave it out. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

E. The standards are not too detailed enough. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

A. Leave it out. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

E. The standards are not detailed enough. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

19. Additional Comments. _____

ARTEP 55-828-30-MTP
11 JULY 2003

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

JOHN M. KEANE
General, United States Army
Acting Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0318204

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.

PIN: 080924-000